



i

# Backup Advanced Backup Manager (B247PRO) v9 Ouick Start Guide for Windows



# **Copyright Notice**

© 2023 Backup247 Pty Ltd. All rights reserved.

The use and copying of this product is subject to a license agreement. Any other use is prohibited. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language in any form by any means without prior written consent of Backup247 Pty Limited. Information in this manual is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of the vendor, Backup247 Pty Limited does not warrant that this document is error free. If you find any errors in this document, please report to Backup247 Pty Limited in writing.

# Trademarks

Backup247, Backup247 Cloud Backup Suite (B247CBS), Backup247 Advanced Backup Suite (B247PRO), Backup247 Offsite Backup Server, Backup247 Standard Backup Suite (B247LITE), Backup247 Replication Server, Backup247 Backup247 Firmware, Backup247 Universal Backup System and Backup247 NAS Client Utility, Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) are trademarks of Backup247 Pty Limited.

Amazon S3 is a registered trademark of Amazon Web Services, Inc., or its affiliates.

Apple and Mac OS X, macOS, and iOS are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.

Dropbox is a registered trademark of Dropbox Inc.

Google Cloud Storage, Google Drive, Google Authenticator, and Android are registered trademarks of Google Inc.

Backblaze B2 Cloud Storage is a registered trademark of Backblaze Inc.

MariaDB is a registered trademark of MariaDB Corporation AB.

Lotus, Domino, and Notes are registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

Microsoft Windows, Microsoft Exchange Server, Microsoft SQL Server, Microsoft Hyper-V, Microsoft Azure, OneDrive, OneDrive for Business, Microsoft Authenticator, and Microsoft Office 365 are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Oracle, Oracle Database, Java and MySQL are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

OpenJDK is a registered trademark of Oracle America, Inc.

Rackspace and OpenStack are registered trademarks of Rackspace US, Inc.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo and JBoss are registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. www.redhat.com in the U.S. and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Ubuntu is a registered trademark of Canonical Ltd.

Debian is a registered trademark of Software in the Public Interest, Inc.

Rocky is a registered trademark of Rocky Brands.

ShadowProtect is a registered trademark of StorageCraft Technology Corporation.

VMware ESXi, vCenter, and vSAN are registered trademarks of VMware, Inc.

All other product names are registered trademarks of their respective owners.

# Disclaimer

ii

Backup247 Pty Ltd will not have or accept any liability, obligation, or responsibility whatsoever for any loss, destruction, or damage (including without limitation consequential loss, destruction, or damage) however arising from or in respect of any use or misuse of reliance on this document. By reading & following instructions in this document, you agree to accept unconditionally the terms of this Disclaimer & as they may be revised and/or amended from time to time by Backup247 Pty Ltd without prior notice to you.



# **Revision History**

Date	Descriptions	Version
25 January 2022	<ul> <li>Ch. 10.5 – added Deduplication</li> <li>Ch. 13.2 – added Migrate Data</li> </ul>	9.1.0.0
28 January 2022	<ul> <li>Ch. 10.5 – updated Reminder instructions</li> </ul>	9.1.0.0



iii



# Table of Contents

1 C	<b>)verv</b> i	ew	1
	1.1	What is this software?	1
	1.2	System Architecture	1
	1.3	Mobile Backup Server	2
	1.4	Two-Factor Authentication	6
2 R	Requii	ements for Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) App	9
	2.1	Backup Softwa <mark>re Version Requirement</mark>	9
	2.2	Network Connection	9
	2.3	Android and iOS Version Requirement	9
3 R	Requi	ements for Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows	10
	3.1	Hardware Requirements	10
	3.2	Software Requ <mark>irements</mark>	11
	3.3	Antivirus Exclu <mark>sion Requirement</mark>	
	3.4	Upgrade VMware Tools Requirement	16
	3.5	Temporary Directory Requirements	
	3.6	Network Drive Requirements	16
	3.7	Firewall Setting <mark>s</mark>	16
	3.8	Two-Factor Au <mark>thentication Requirem</mark> ents	16
	3.9	Mobile Backup Requirements	16
	3.10	Network Bandwidth	16
	3.11	Limitations	
		3.11.1 RDS User Profile Disks	17
		3.11.2 Enhanced Network Drive Support	17
	3.12	Best Practices and Recommendations	17
		3.12.1 Periodic Backup Schedule	17
		3.12.2 Set up of both Periodic and Continuous Backup Schedule	18
		3.12.4 Temporary Directory Folder Location	18
4 0	Set St	arted with Advanced Client (B247PRO)	19
5 C	) penE	Direct Restore	20
	5.1	What is OpenDirect Restore?	20
	5.2	How does OpenDirect Restore work?	21
	5.3	Benefits of using OpenDirect Restore	21
	5.4	Requirements	22
		5.4.1 Supported Backup Modules	22
		5.4.2 License Requirements	22



	5.4.3	Backup Quota Storage	23
	5.4.4	Windows Operating System	23
	5.4.5	Available Spare Drive Letter	23
	5.4.6	Network Requirements	23
	5.4.7	Other Dependencies	24
	5.4.8	Permissions	24
6 Down	load a	nd Install Advanced Client (B247PRO)	25
6.1	Downl	load Advanced Client (B247PRO)	26
6.2	Install	Advanced Client (B247PRO)	27
	6.2.1	Online Installation using EXE online installer	27
	6.2.2	Offline Installation using ZIP offline installer	32
6.3	Advan	nced Clien <mark>t (B247PRO</mark> ) Services	33
6.4		e Backup Server (MBS) Status Check and Backup247 Mobile (B247MOI onnectio <mark>n Check</mark>	,
7 Regis	ster dev	vice for <mark>2FA in Advanced C</mark> lient (B247PRO)	38
7.1		Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator	
	7.1.1	Without Mobile Add-on Module	
	Pho	one num <mark>ber verification for acco</mark> unt recovery	
	7.1.2	With Mobile Add-on Module	
7.2		Microsoft Authenticator	
7.3	-	Google Authenticator	
		o Advanced Client (B247PRO)	
8.1		to Advan <mark>ced Client (B247PRO)</mark> without 2FA	
8.2	Login	to Advan <mark>ced Client (B247PRO) w</mark> ith 2FA using Backup247 Mobile MOB) Authenticator	
8.3	•	to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Microsoft Authenticator.	
8.4	•	to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Google Authenticator	
8.5	•	to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Twilio	
	-	g in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA	
10 Adv	anced	Client (B247PRO) Overview	91
10.1	Profile	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	92
	10.1.1	General	92
	10.1.2	2 Contacts	94
	10.1.3	3 Time Zone	96
	10.1.4	Encryption Recovery	96
	10.1.5	Password	97
	10.1.6	Authentication	98

V



	10.1.7 Security Settings	107
10.2	Language	108
10.3	Information	108
10.4	Backup	109
10.5	Backup Sets	109
	Backup Set Settings	110
	General	111
	Source	114
	Backup Sch <mark>ed</mark> ule	127
	Continuous <mark>Ba</mark> ckup	131
	Destination	133
	Deduplication	136
	Retention Policy	
	Command Line Tool	151
	Reminder	156
	Bandwidth Control	
	Others	
10.6	Report	
	10.6.1 Backup	
	10.6.2 Restore	
	10.6.3 Usage	171
10.7	Restore	
10.8	Settings	173
	10.8.1 Proxy	174
	10.8.2 Windows Event Log	176
	10.8.3 Mobile Backup	177
10.9	Utilities	187
	10.9.1 Data Integrity Check	187
	Data Integrity Check Result	201
	Test Mode confirmation	202
	10.9.2 Space Freeing Up	204
	10.9.3 Delete Backup Data	207
	10.9.4 Decrypt Backup Data	212
10.10	Online Help	215
10.11	I System Tray	216
11 Creat	e a Backup Set	222

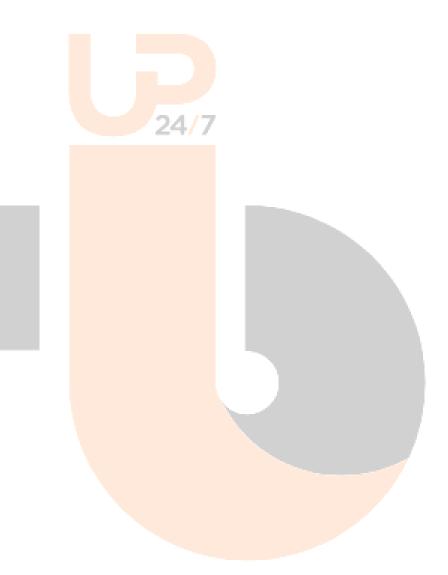


12 Overview on the Backup Process	234
12.1 Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) Process	
12.2 Backup Set Index Handling Process	
12.2.1 Start Backup Job	
12.2.2 Completed Backup Job	
12.3 Data Validation Check Process	
13 Run Backup Jobs	240
13.1 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO)	
13.2 Start a Manual Backup	
14 Restore Data	244
14.1 Restore Metho <mark>d</mark>	
14.1.1 Traditional Restore	
14.1.2 OpenDi <mark>rect Restore</mark>	
14.2 Restore Filter	
15 Mobile Backup and Restore to B247CBS and Predefined Destination	on 263
16 Contact Backup24 <mark>7</mark>	268
16.1 Technical Assi <mark>stance</mark>	
16.2 Documentation	
Appendix	269
Appendix	
	269
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)	
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Exam <mark>ple Scenarios for Resto</mark> re Filter	
Appendix A:       Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)         Appendix B:       Example Scenarios for Restore Filter         Appendix C:       Batch Files	
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat	
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat	
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat ListBackupSet.bat	
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat ListBackupSet.bat RunBackupSet.bat	269 272 281 281 288 292 293 299
Appendix A:       Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)         Appendix B:       Example Scenarios for Restore Filter         Appendix C:       Batch Files         RunCB.bat       RunConfigurator.bat         ListBackupSet.bat       RunBackupSet.bat         ListBackupJob.bat       ListBackupJob.bat	269 272 281 281 288 288 292 293 299 
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat ListBackupSet.bat RunBackupSet.bat Restore.bat	269 272 281 281 288 288 292 293 299 299 302 308
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat ListBackupSet.bat ListBackupSet.bat RunBackupSet.bat Decrypt.bat	269 272 281 281 288 288 292 293 299 
Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter Appendix C: Batch Files RunCB.bat RunConfigurator.bat ListBackupSet.bat ListBackupSet.bat ListBackupJob.bat Restore.bat Decrypt.bat RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat	269 272 281 281 288 292 293 293 293 302 308 314 319
Appendix A:       Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)         Appendix B:       Example Scenarios for Restore Filter         Appendix C:       Batch Files         RunCB.bat       RunConfigurator.bat         ListBackupSet.bat       ListBackupSet.bat         Restore.bat       Restore.bat         Decrypt.bat       RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat         Appendix D:       Example Scenarios for the Reminder	269 272 281 281 288 292 293 299 293 299 302 308 314 319 319
Appendix A:       Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)	269 272 281 281 288 292 293 293 299 302 308 314 319 319 320
Appendix A:       Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO).         Appendix B:       Example Scenarios for Restore Filter.         Appendix C:       Batch Files         RunCB.bat       RunConfigurator.bat         ListBackupSet.bat       RunBackupSet.bat         Restore.bat       Restore.bat         Decrypt.bat       RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat         Appendix D:       Example Scenarios for the Reminder         Windows Log Off       Windows Restart	269 272 281 281 288 292 293 299 302 308 314 319 319 320 321

247



Scenar	io 3 (Windows Restart + Enabled Locking Workstation)	324
Scenar	io 4 (Windows Restart + Unselected Locking Workstation)	325
Scenar	io 5 (Windows Shutdown + Enabled Locking Workstation)	326
Scenar	io 6 (Windows Shutdown + Unselected Locking Workstation)	327
Appendix E:	Create Free Trial Account in Advanced Client (B247PRO)	328
Appendix F:	How to Manage Network Drives which are not set in Windows	331



viii





## 1 Overview

#### 1.1 What is this software?

**BACKUP247** brings you specialized client backup software, namely Advanced Client (B247PRO), to provide a comprehensive backup solution for protecting files/folders on your machine and extend protection to both Android and iOS mobile devices, with a wide variety of backup destinations (major cloud storage service providers, FTP/SFTP, local drive, etc.) of your choice.

#### 1.2 System Architecture

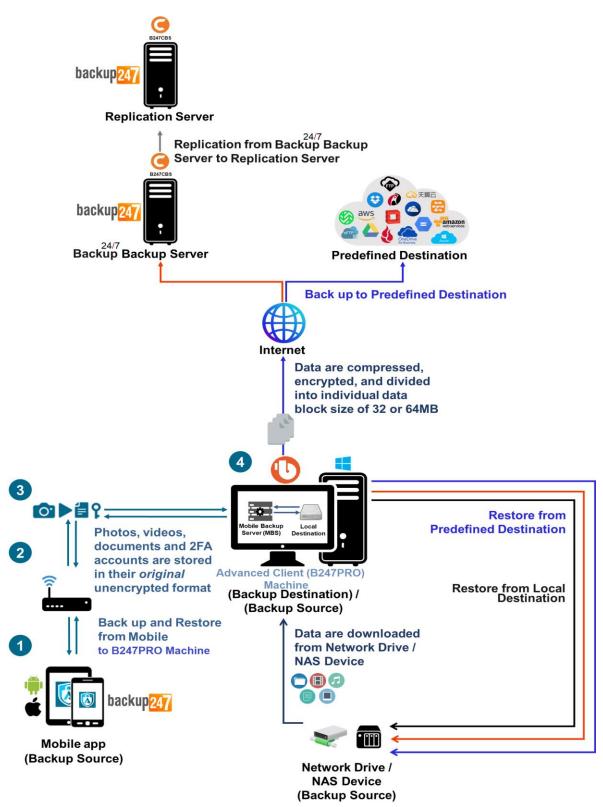
Below is the system architecture diagram illustrating the major elements involved in the backup process among the backup machine Advanced Client (B247PRO), Backup247 Mobile app and B247CBS.

#### NOTE

The first mobile backup may take up a few hours to back up all photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from your device. Subsequent backups will take less time. For a first-time mobile backup, please do the following to prevent any interruption during the backup process:

- For Android devices, disable screen lock or timeout
- For iOS devices, disable auto-lock
- Turn off all power saving modes
- Connect to power source





#### 1.3 Mobile Backup Server

The Mobile Backup Server (MBS) will be utilized to handle mobile backup and restore of Backup247 Mobile app (B247MOB). It is an integral part of Advanced Client (B247PRO).

The MBS will be activated automatically when a mobile device installed with the Backup247 Mobile app is successfully registered for mobile backup with Advanced Client (B247PRO).



Afterwards, it will be automatically restarted whenever the Advanced Client (B247PRO) services is restarted or when the Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine is rebooted or powered on. The MBS will be deactivated when all mobile devices have deregistered from the mobile backup settings and the Advanced Client (B247PRO) services are restarted.

The MBS will use the following port ranges:

- TCP Port: 54000 to 54099
- UDP Port: 54200 to 54299
- **Protocol**: Http, for the request of Backup247 Mobile app (B247MOB)

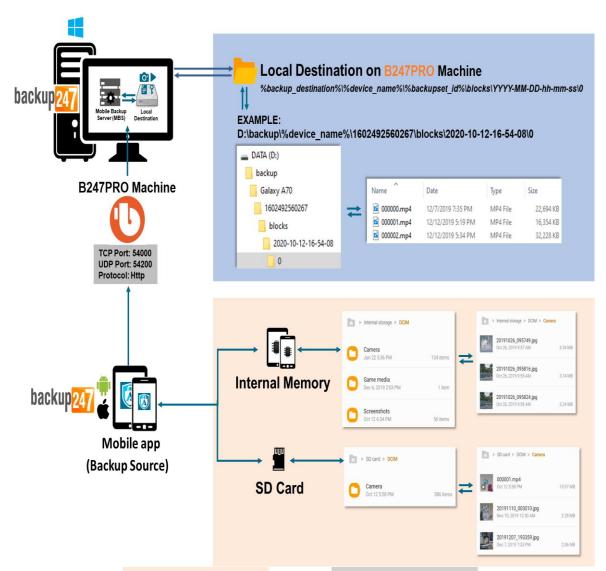
The default TCP and UDP ports are **54000** and **54200**. If these ports are already used by other applications or services, then the MBS will automatically acquire another port(s).

The actual TCP and UDP port can be seen on Advanced Client (B247PRO) when pairing a mobile device for mobile backup.

# Mobile Backup Setup Please scan the QR code to get the below Mobile App from App Store. Once installed the Mobile App, launch it and scan the same QR code to complete the device registration. Mobile Backup (Add new device for backup without migration) Ownload on the Oogle Play Please make sure below 2 ports are not blocked by any Firewall settings TCP Port: 54200 UDP Port: 54200 UDP Port: 54200

Photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts are stored either in mobile device's internal memory or SD Card. These are selected as backup source using the Backup247 Mobile app and will be backed up to the local destination of a Backup247 machine, that can be a Hard Drive, Flash Drive, and/or Network Drive in their *original* unencrypted format. For Android devices, photos and videos will retain all EXIF. While for iOS devices, photos and videos will retain most of the EXIF including, capture date, location, and lens.





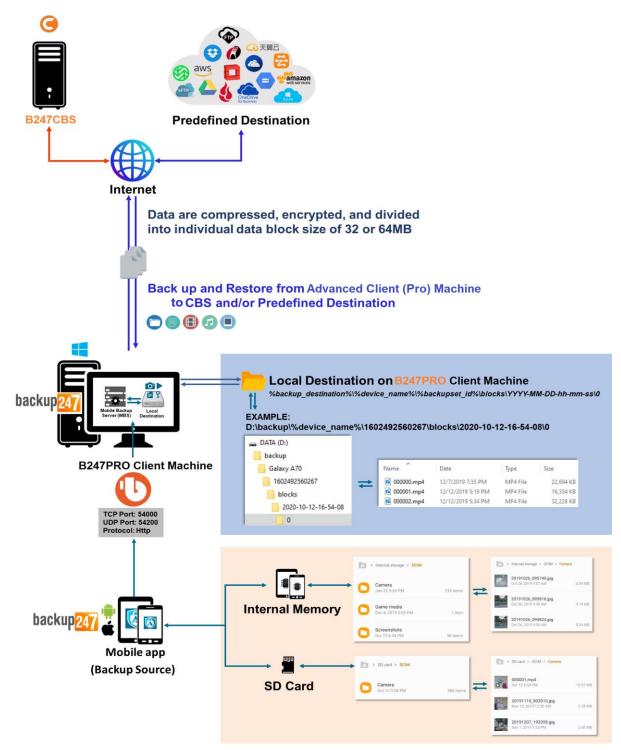
If storage of photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts to B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination is required, then this can be done using Advanced Client (B247PRO) to perform a secondary backup and restore of the photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts on the local drive to B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination.

To back up and restore photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from Backup247 Mobile app (B247MOB) to Advanced Client (B247PRO) then **B247CBS** and/or Predefined Destination is a two-step process.

**1**<sup>st</sup>: Back up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from B247MOB to Advanced Client (B247PRO) local destination.

**2<sup>nd</sup>:** Create a File backup set using Advanced Client (B247PRO), using the local backup destination as the backup source. Then back up this backup set to B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination.









#### **1.4 Two-Factor Authentication**

Two-Factor Authentication (2FA) supports TOTP (Time-based One-time Password) and Push notification authentications using the Backup247 Mobile app (B247MOB) to provide additional security for the user login process. Since aside from logging in with just a username and password, if the account has Two-Factor Authentication enabled, there will be an additional step necessary to login.

Upon initial login to Advanced Client (B247PRO), you will have the option to set up Two-Factor Authentication, or you may skip the setup and do it later. If you proceed with the configuration of Two-Factor Authentication, it will be enabled for your account automatically. You may add more than one mobile device for authentication.

For logins with Two-Factor Authentication enabled, the authentication method that will be available will depend on the authenticator app registered during setup.

If Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) is used as the authenticator app:

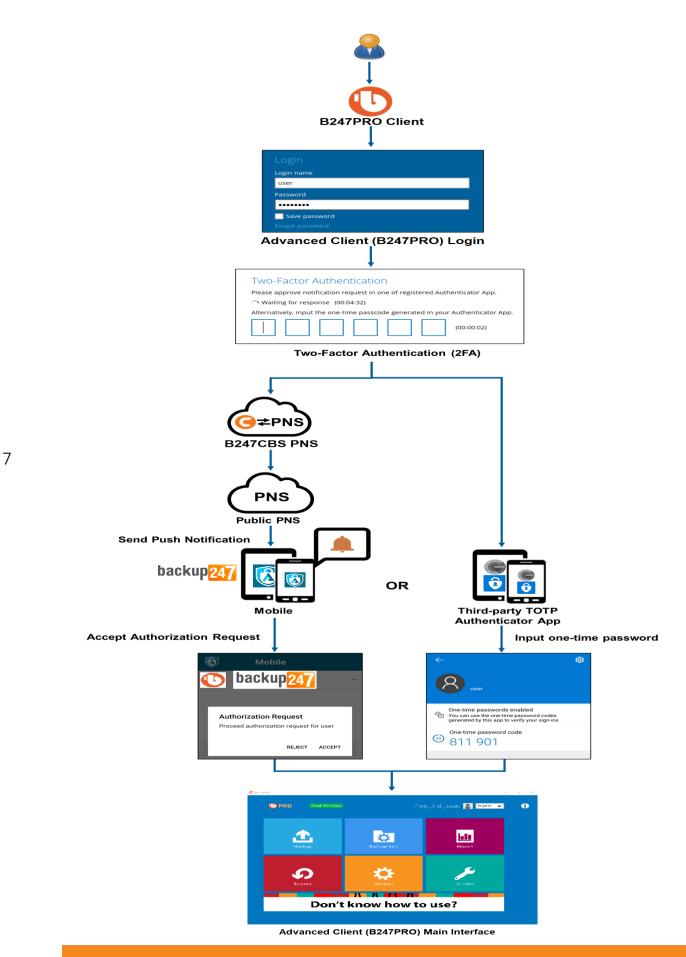
- you will either accept the login request via push notification in the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app; or 24/7
- enter the one-time password generated in the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.

If a third-party authenticator app is used:

• you will enter the one-time password generated in the third-party authenticator (i.e., Authy, Duo, Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, LastPass Authenticator, iOS 15 Built-in Two-Factor Authenticator, etc.)

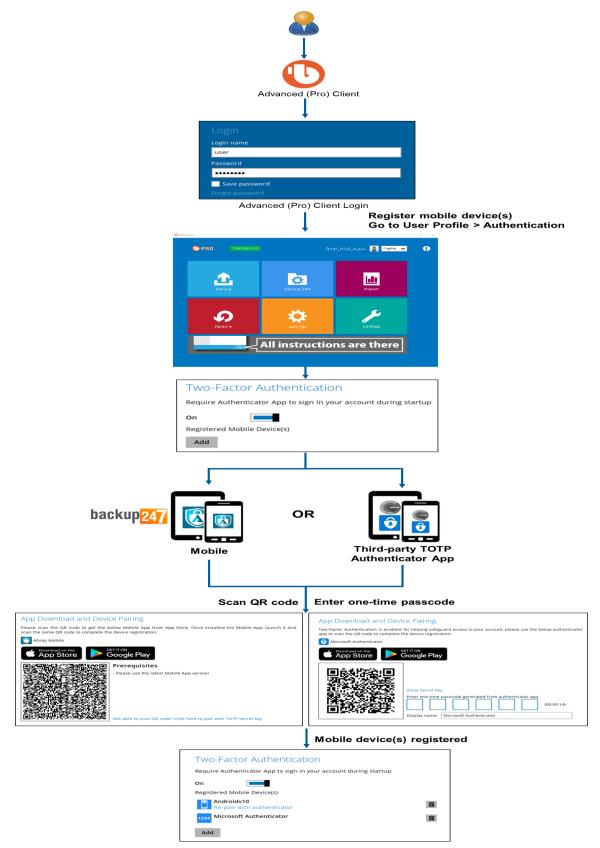
This illustrates the user login process for accounts with Two-Factor Authentication enabled using either the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app or a third-party authenticator app.







This illustrates the registration of mobile device(s) for Two-Factor Authentication using either the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app or a third-party authenticator app.





# 2 Requirements for Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) App

#### 2.1 Backup Software Version Requirement

- Download and install the latest version of Advanced Client (B247PRO) v9.0.0.0 or above.
- Download and install the latest version of Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app on the Play Store for Android mobile devices and on the App Store for iOS mobile devices.

#### 2.2 Network Connection

9

Ensure that the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app is connected to the same local network as the Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine. Failure to do so will prevent you from performing backup and/or restore.

#### 2.3 Android and iOS Version Requirement

- For Android devices, the Android version must be 8 or above.
- For iOS devices, the iOS version must be 12.0.0 or above.





# 3 Requirements for Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows

### 3.1 Hardware Requirements

Refer to the link below for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for installing Advanced Client (B247PRO):

installing Advanced Client (B24/PRO):
B247PRO 🕛 / B247LITE
CPU:
Quad Core architecture or above 1
<sup>1]</sup> Automatic weekly Periodic Data integrity check (PDIC), Post backup data validation checks and other application processes (e.g., retention policy job, Data Integrity Check (DIC) etc.) are now performed by the 3247PRO/B247LITE client application, resulting in increased processing power requirement and memory usage
Memory (RAM):
Minimum: 4 GB (at least 50% free memory available) Recommended: 8 GB or more (at least 50% free memory available)
The default maximum Java memory setting (Java Heap Size) for B247PRO; on Windows server grade operating system (Windows 2008/2012/2016/2019) is 4096MB or 4GB
Installation Space:
Minimum: 500 MB
Network Protocol:
TCP/IP
Network Bandwidth:
10 Mbps or above connection speed <sup>[2]</sup>
<sup>2]</sup> To ensure a stable and consistent backup/restore performance
OpenJDK Version: (bundled)
DpenJDK 1.8.0u181 or above الم
<sup>3]</sup> Performance and stability is dependent on the operating system platforms and / or hardware architecture



#### 3.2 Software Requirements

Refer to the following article for the list of compatible operating systems and Hyper-V platforms:

Operating System	Supported Version	Support End Date (YYYY/MM/DD)
Windows platforms: <sup>[1]</sup>		
XP Home / Professional *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
2003 Web / Standard / Enterprise / Data Center *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Vista Home Basic / Home Premium / Business / Enterprise / Ultimate *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
7 Home Basic / Home Premium / Professional / Enterprise / Ultimate	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
8 Pro / Enterprise	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
8.1 Pro / Enterprise	9.1.0.0 or above	2023/01/10
10 Home / Pro / Enterprise <sup>[2]</sup>	9.1.0.0 or above	2025/10/14
11 Home / Pro / Enterprise	9.1.0.0 or above	
Server 2008 Standard / Enterprise / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Server 2008 R2 Standard / Enterprise / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Server 2012 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	2023/01/10
Server 2012 R2 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	2023/01/10
Server 2016 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	2027/01/12
Server 2019 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	2030/01/09
Server 2022 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	2031/10/14
Small Business Server 2003 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Small Business Server 2008 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Small Business Server 2011 Standard / Essentials / Datacenter	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
* EOS reached, Backup247 will provide best effort support. Web br	owser HTTPS SSL CA Certif	ficate chains support based on

\* EOS reached, Backup247 will provide best effort support. Web browser HTTPS SSL CA Certificate chains support based on OS.

<sup>[1]</sup> For B247LITE installation on Windows, you can only install it on a Windows desktop operating systems (non-Server OS)

<sup>[2]</sup> Windows 10 Home Edition is supported since version 8.1.0.50



Operating System	Supported Version	Support End Date (YYYY/MM/DD)
Linux platforms: <sup>[3]</sup>		
CentOS 7	9.1.0.0 or above	2024/06/30
CentOS 8	9.1.0.0 or above	2021/12/31
Debian 9	9.1.0.0 or above	2022/06/30
Debian 10	9.1.0.0 or above	<mark>2022/08/31</mark> 2024/06
Debian 11	9.1.0.0 or above	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7	9.1.0.0 or above	2024/06/30
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8	9.1.0.0 or above	2029/05/31
Rocky Linux 8.4	9.1.0.0 or above	2029/05/31
Ubuntu 14.04 LTS	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Ubuntu 16.04 LTS	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Ubuntu 17.04 *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Ubuntu 18.04 LTS	9.1.0.0 or above	2023/04
Ubuntu 19.04 LTS	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Ubuntu 20.04 LTS	9.1.0.0 or above	2025/04
Ubuntu 21.04	9.1.0.0 or above	2022/01
* EOS reached, Backup247 will provide best effort sup		

<sup>1</sup> EOS reached, Backup247 will provide best effort support <sup>3]</sup> GNU GLIBC 2.14 or above Library is required for all Linux platforms

247



Operating System	Supported Version	Support End Date (YYYY/MM/DD)
Unix platforms: [4,5]		
FreeBSD 12 <sup>[6]</sup>	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
FreeBSD 13 <sup>[6]</sup>	9.1.0.0 or above	2026/01/31
Solaris 10 x64 *	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
Solaris 11 Express x64	9.1.0.0 or above	-
Solaris 11 x64	9.1.0.0 or above	2024/11/30

\* EOS reached, Backup247 will provide best effort support

<sup>[4]</sup> Support system with graphical environment only. GUI support for Gnome, but KDE should work

<sup>[5]</sup> Limited support, no intensive testing has been performed on this platform, but should work. Best effort support will be provided

<sup>[6]</sup> GNU GLIBC 2.14 or above Library is required for all FreeBSD platforms

#### Mac OS platforms:

Mac OS X 10.7.3 or above	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.8	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.9	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.10	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.11	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.12 (Sierra)	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.13 (High Sierra)	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.14 (Mojave)	9.1.0.0 or above	EOS reached
macOS 10.15 (Catalina)	9.1.0.0 or above	Supported
macOS 11 (Big Sur)	9.1.0.0 or above	Supported
macOS 12 (Monterey)	9.1.0.0 or above	Supported
Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB):		

Android 8.0 or above	9.1.0.0 or above	-
iOS 12.0 or above	9.1.0.0 or above	-



Refer to the following article for the list of compatible operating system for OpenDirect and Granular Restore:

B247Pro 🕕	B247Lite 🕕
-----------	------------

Operating System	File Backupset	MS Hyper-V Backupset	VMware Backupset
Windows 7 SP1 or above		-	O
Windows 8		O	O
Windows 8.1		O	O
Windows 10		O	O
Windows 11		O	O
Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1 or above	O	-	O
Windows Server 2012		O	U
Windows Server 2012 R2		O	U
Windows Server 2016	O	O	O
Windows Server 2019		U	O
Windows Server 2022		Ū	O

VMware ESXi / vCenter Backup Set only supports for 64-bit Windows operating system.

Granular restore is only supported on guest VMs running on Windows operating system.

The drive(s) of the Windows guest VMs are NOT encrypted with security software, i.e., BitLocker or other third-party security software

Other Dependencies The following dependencies need to be installed on the B247PRO / B247LITE restore machine for OpenDirect / Granular Restore to work:

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable (x86) / (x64) ( https://www.microsoft.com/enhk/download/confirmation.aspx?id=48145)
- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable Update 3 RC ( https://www.microsoft.com/enus/download/details.aspx?id=52685)
- Update for Universal C Runtime in Windows ( https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2999226/update-. for-universal-c-runtime-in-windows ) 0
  - Prerequisites for Windows 8.1 or Windows Server 2012 R2
    - Install KB2919442 ( https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2919442/march-2014servicing-stack-update-for-windows-8.1-and-windows-server-2012-r2)
      - Install KB2919355 ( https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2919355/windows-rt-8.1,-windows-8.1,-and-windows-server-2012-r2-update-april-2014)
- Microsoft Security Advisory 3033929 for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2 https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx

.



#### 3.3 Antivirus Exclusion Requirement

To optimize performance of Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows, and to avoid conflict with your antivirus software, refer to the following instructions that list processes and directory paths that should be added to all antivirus software whitelist / exclusion list:

#### **B247LITE / B247PRO**

The following Processes should be whitelisted:

For B247LITE/B247PRO on Windows - bJW.exe

Note: For B247LITE/B247PRO version 7.17 or above, the bJW.exe Process is automatically added to Windows Defender exclusion list for Windows 10 and 2016, during installation / upgrade via installer or upgrade via AUA.

- For B247LITE/B247PRO on x64 Windows cbpsX64.exe
- For B247LITE/B247PRO on x86 Windows cbpsX86.exe

CBT Cluster Services (for client with Hyper-V VM backup set)

- For B247PRO on Windows 2008 / R2 and 2012 / R2 CBTClusterService.exe
- NFS Service (for client with VMware VM and Hyper-V VM Run Direct backup set)
  - For B247PRO on x64 Windows nfsX64.exe
  - For B247PRO on x86 Windows nfsX86.exe

The following directory path should be whitelisted:

B247LITE/B247PRO installation folder

- C:\Program Files\B247LITE
- C:\Program Files\B247PRO

B247PRO NFS service installation folder

C:\Program Files\B247PRO NFS

B247LITE/B247PRO log folder

- %SystemDrive%\ProgramData\B247LITE
- %SystemDrive%\ProgramData\B247PRO

B247LITE/B247PRO configuration and log folder

- %UserProfile%\.B247LITE
- %UserProfile%\.B247PRO

#### NOTE

The bJW.exe process is automatically added to Windows Defender exclusion list for Windows 10 and 2016 / 2019, during installation / upgrade via installer or upgrade via AUA.

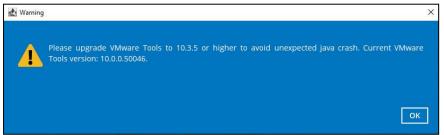
For mobile backups, the mobile backup destination must also be added to all antivirus software whitelist / exclusion list.



#### 3.4 Upgrade VMware Tools Requirement

To avoid an unexpected java crash, if the Windows machine is a guest VM hosted on a VMware Host, it is highly recommended that the VMware tools version installed on the guest VM is 10.3.5 or higher.

Below is the warning message that will be displayed if the version of the VMware Tools is lower than 10.3.5.



#### 3.5 Temporary Directory Requirements

The temporary directory is used for various purposes, such as storage of temporary spooled file (for database specific backup type in Advanced Client (B247PRO), remote file list, local file list, temporary delta file and other files of temporary nature.

It is strongly recommended to use a local drive instead of a network drive to ensure optimal backup/restore performance.

#### 3.6 Network Drive Requirements

The login accounts for network drives must have read and write access permission to ensure that backup and restore would be successful.

#### 3.7 Firewall Settings

Make sure that your firewall settings allow network traffic through the following domain and/or ports:

- For Advanced Client (B247PRO) to function correctly must allow outbound connections to \*.Backup247.com.au via port 80 and 443.
- For mobile backup inbound / outbound network traffic must be allowed through the following default ports: HTTP port: 54000 and UDP port: 54200.

#### 3.8 Two-Factor Authentication Requirements

Please refer to Backup247 2FA user guide for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for using Two-Factor Authentication on Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.

#### 3.9 Mobile Backup Requirements

Please refer to Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) User Guide for details of the minimum and recommended requirements for installing the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.

#### 3.10 Network Bandwidth

10 Mbps or above connection speed.



#### 3.11 Limitations

#### 3.11.1 RDS User Profile Disks

Advanced Client (B247PRO) running on Windows RDS server with User Profile Disk enabled is not supported. The Windows User Profile will be deleted every time the user logs off the machine. As the Advanced Client (B247PRO) configuration files are saved under the Windows User Profile, this will cause a failed backup.

#### 3.11.2 Enhanced Network Drive Support

- For network drives which have not been already setup or mapped in Windows.
- Temporary folder location is not supported with individual login credentials but can still be setup separately using existing Windows User Authentication login.
- It also does not support Pre-Backup and Post-Backup Commands.
- Not supported on "Restore Raw file" and "Restore to local computer" options.
- Not supported for mobile backup destinations.

#### 3.12 Best Practices and Recommendations

#### 3.12.1 Periodic Backup Schedule

The periodic backup schedule should be reviewed regularly to ensure the interval is sufficient to handle the data volume on the machine. Over time, data usage pattern may change on a production server, i.e., the number of new files created the number of files which are updated/delete, new users may be added etc.

When using periodic backup schedules with small backup intervals such as backup every 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes etc. although the increased backup frequently does ensure that changes to files are captured regularly which allows greater flexibility in recovery to a point in time.

Consider the following key points to efficiently handle backup sets with periodic backup schedule.

- Hardware to achieve optimal performance, compatible hardware requirements is a must. Ensure you have the backup machine's appropriate hardware specifications to accommodate frequency of backups,
  - so that the data is always backed up within the periodic backup interval
  - so that the backup frequency does not affect the performance of the production server
- Storage ensure you have enough storage quota allocated based on the amount of new data and changed data you will backup.

Retention Policy – also make sure to consider the Retention Policy settings and Retention Area storage management which can grow because of the changes in the backup data for each backup job.



#### 3.12.2 Set up of both Periodic and Continuous Backup Schedule

On a Windows platform, although it is possible to setup both <u>Periodic</u> backup schedule and <u>Continuous</u> backup schedules on a File backup set, it is recommended to only use one schedule as only one schedule backup job can run at any one time.

For example, a backup job is started by the Periodic backup schedule and is running, if a Continuous backup is scheduled to run, the backup job will be skipped and vice versa.

#### Periodic Backup Schedule vs. Continuous Backup Schedule

The following table shows the comparison between a periodic and continuous backup schedule.

	Features		Periodic Backup Schedule	Continuous Backup Schedule
	whether or not a change o source is made	on the		×
Run Ret	ention Policy after backup	)		×
Exclude	system files from the bac	kup	×	<ul> <li>Image: A second s</li></ul>
Only app size	bly to files smaller than (M	IB)	×	•
Exclude	Filter		×	~
(i.e., Wir	ed on all operating system ndows, MacOS, Linux, D, QNAP, and Synology)	าร	~	Only supported on Windows operating system
Supports	s all backup set types		•	Only supports File Backup Sets

#### 3.12.4 Temporary Directory Folder Location

Temporary directory folder is used by Advanced Client (B247PRO) for storing backup set index files generated during a backup job and temporary restore files.

To ensure optimal backup/restoration performance, it is recommended that the temporary directory folder is set to a local drive with sufficient free disk space.



# 4 Get Started with Advanced Client (B247PRO)

This quick start guide will walk you through the following six (6) major parts to get you started with using Advanced Client (B247PRO).

# **Download and Install**

Download and Install Advanced (B247PRO) Client on your Windows machine

# Launch the App

Launch and log in to Advanced (B247PRO) Client

# Set up 2FA and/or Mobile Backup

Register mobile device for 2FA and/or mobile backup (optional)

# **Create a Backup Set**

Create a backup set according to your preference

# **Run Backup Jobs**

Run the backup job to back up data

# **Restore Data**

Restore backed up data to your system



## **5 OpenDirect Restore**

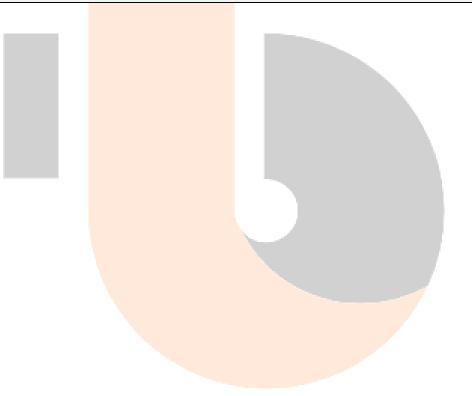
#### 5.1 What is OpenDirect Restore?

OpenDirect restore is an additional restore option for restoring files from a Windows File backup set. The OpenDirect restore method makes use of the granular restore technology to make selective restore of individual files from a large compressed or image file, for example zip, RAR, ISO files, without the need to restore the compressed or image file first, to give you a fast and convenient file restore solution.

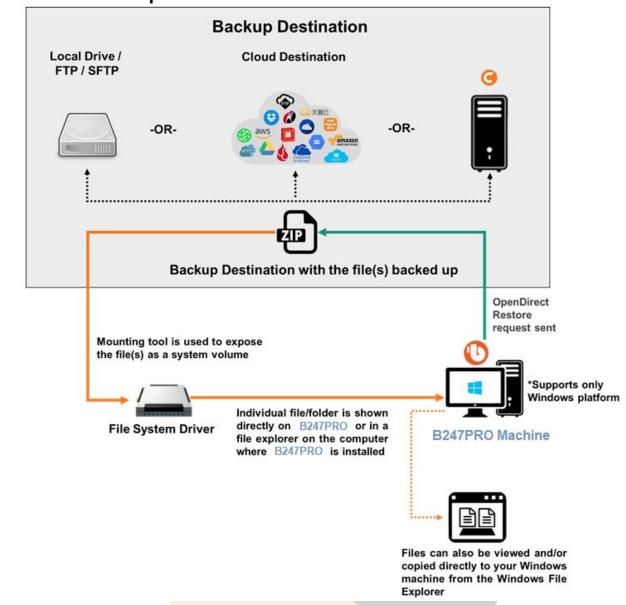
During the OpenDirect restore process, the files/folder can be viewed and/or copied from the Windows File Explorer on the Windows machine you are performing the restore. OpenDirect restore is only supported on File backup sets created and backed up using Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows platform with OpenDirect restore feature enabled.

#### IMPORTANT

OpenDirect restore requires an additional OpenDirect / Granular Restore add-on module license to work. Contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for further details.





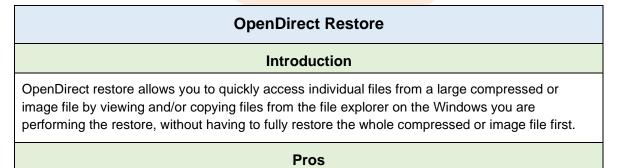


#### 5.2 How does OpenDirect Restore work?

#### 5.3 Benefits of using OpenDirect Restore

21

#### Comparison between OpenDirect File Restore and Traditional File Restore





Restore of Entire Compressed File Not Required	As opposed to the traditional restore where you must restore the entire compressed or image file first before you can access any individual file in it, OpenDirect restore allows you to view and download individual files from a compressed or image file, without having to restore compressed file or image file first.		
Ability to Restore Selected Files	When restoring a large compressed or image file, sometimes, you may only need to restore individual file(s) out of the entire file, therefore, OpenDirect restore gives you the flexibility to restore selective file(s) quickly, so it saves you time and effort to achieve your restore goal.		
	Cons		
No Encryption and Compression	To ensure optimal restore performance, the backup of the files in an OpenDirect file backup set will <b>NOT</b> be encrypted and compressed, therefore, you may have to take these factors in consideration when selecting this restore option.		

T	rad	litio	nal I	Rest	ore
-					

#### Introduction

The traditional restore method restores the entire compressed file or image file. Backed up data can only be accessed when complete restore is performed.

Pros					
Backup with Compression and Encryption Backup file(s) are compressed, therefore in smaller file size, and encrypted before being uploaded to the backup destination.					
Cons					
Slower Recovery	As the entire compressed or image file must be restored before you can access any individual files, restore time could be long if the file size is large				

#### 5.4 Requirements

#### 5.4.1 Supported Backup Modules

OpenDirect restore is only supported on File backup sets created and backed up using Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows platform with OpenDirect restore feature enabled.

#### 5.4.2 License Requirements

An OpenDirect / Granular restore add-on module license is required per backup set for this feature to work. Contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for more details



#### 5.4.3 Backup Quota Storage

As compression is not enabled for OpenDirect file backup sets, to optimize restore performance the storage quota required will be higher than non-OpenDirect file backup sets. Contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for details

#### 5.4.4 Windows Operating System

Advanced Client (B247PRO) must be installed on a 32-bit or 64-bit Windows Operating System, as libraries for OpenDirect only support Windows platform.

Refer Section 3.2 for the list of compatible operating systems for OpenDirect and Granular Restore.

#### 5.4.5 Available Spare Drive Letter

One spare drive letter must be available on the Windows machine for the OpenDirect restore process, as the compressed file or image is mounted on Windows as a logical drive. Advanced Client (B247PRO) will automatically take the next available drive letter in alphabetical order for the compressed or image file.

#### NOTES

- 1. The Windows drive letters A, B, and C are not used by OpenDirect restore.
- 2. The OpenDirect restore assigned drive letter(s) will be released once you exit from Advanced Client (B247PRO) UI.

#### 5.4.6 Network Requirements

Recommended minimum network speed is at least 100Mbps download speed.

The network bandwidth requirements will increase in proportion to the size of the compressed file/image and or the incremental delta chain length to ensure optimal performance. Working with limited network bandwidth may severely affect the granular restore performance.

You can use an online network speed test website (e.g., <u>www.speedtest.net</u>) to get an idea of the actual bandwidth of the machine.



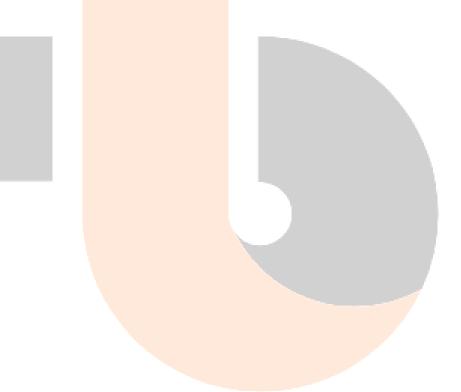
#### 5.4.7 Other Dependencies

The following dependencies are restore-related. Therefore, they will be checked by Advanced Client (B247PRO) only when an OpenDirect restore is performed. Absence of these elements will not affect the backup job but would cause the restore to fail.

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable (x86) / (x64) <u>https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48145</u>
- Update for Universal C Runtime in Windows
   <u>https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2999226/update-for-universal-c-runtime-in-windows</u>
- For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2 only
   Microsoft Security Advisory 3033929
   <a href="https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx">https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx</a>

#### 5.4.8 Permissions

The Windows login account used for installation and operation of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) client machine requires Administrator privileges.





# 6 Download and Install Advanced Client (B247PRO)

There are two installation modes of Advanced Client (B247PRO), online installation and offline installation. Below is the table of comparison between online installation and offline installation.

	Online Installation	Offline Installation
Installation Time	download the binary and component files (80MB to 132MB depending on operating system) each time the installation is run.	<ul> <li>Takes less time as all the necessary binary and component files are already available in the offline installer and offline installer can be downloaded once but reused many times.</li> <li>Offline installer size is 50MB to 195MB depending on operating system as it contains all the necessary binary and component files.</li> </ul>
Deployments	<ul> <li>of device installations.</li> <li>Suitable for sites with fast and stable internet connection as internet connection is needed each time when an installation is run.</li> <li>A slow internet connection will result in longer installation time and</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Suitable for multiple or mass device installations.</li> <li>Suitable for client sites with metered internet connections as once the offline installer is downloaded, internet connection is not needed each time when an installation is run.</li> <li>May need to update the product version after installation if an older offline installer is used.</li> </ul>



#### 6.1 Download Advanced Client (B247PRO)

 In a web browser, click the blue icon on the top right corner to open the download page for the Advanced Client (B247PRO) installation package file from Backup247 Technical Support Team 's website.

English	~	<b>±</b>
		v"

- 2. In the **Windows** section under the **Advanced Client (B247PRO)** tab of the download page, you can choose between two installation methods:
  - Online installation using EXE online installer
  - Offline installation using ZIP offline installer

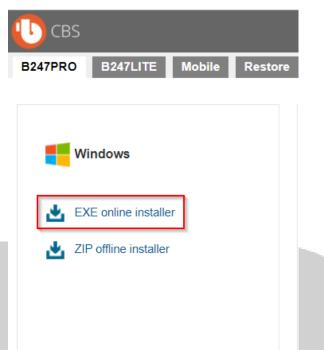
B24/FR	0 B247LITE	Mobile	Restore	
	Windows			
	EXE online installer			



#### 6.2 Install Advanced Client (B247PRO)

#### 6.2.1 Online Installation using EXE online installer

1. Go to the download page of Backup247 Technical Support Team 's website and download the Advanced Client (B247PRO) **EXE online installer**.



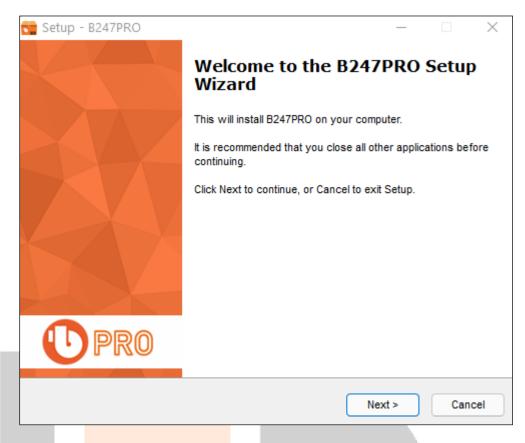
2. Double-click the icon of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) installation package **.exe** file you have downloaded.



- 3. Click Run
- 4. Click **Continue** to start the installation if dialog box appears asking permission. Typically happens if User Account Control is enabled.



5. Click **Next** to continue.



6. Select **I accept the agreement** after reading the license agreement, then click **Next** to proceed.

	p - B247PRO —		×
	ease read the following important information before continuing.		
	ease read the following License Agreement. You must accept the terms o reement before continuing with the installation.	f this	
1. w da al w 2. fr B, by	erms of Use All Software provided by BACKUP247 PTY LTD is on an "as is" basis we varranties of any kind and BACKUP247 PTY LTD will not be liable for any amages of any kind arising from the use. BACKUP247 PTY LTD further dis I warranties, express and implied, including without limitation, any implied varranties of merchant-ability or fitness for a particular purpose. BACKUP247 PTY LTD grants you a non-exclusive, non-transferable, roy ee, limited license to use the binary form of the software provided by ACKUP247 PTY LTD for personal use only. Redistribution of programs ov y BACKUP247 PTY LTD, unless explicitly granted by BACKUP247 PTY LTD trictly prohibited.	sclaims /alty- vned	
0	I accept the agreement		
	< Back Next >	(	Cancel



7. Choose the installation directory. Then, click **Next** to continue.

🔂 Setup - B247PRO -	_	$\times$
Select Destination Location Where should B247PRO be installed?		O
Setup will install B247PRO into the following folder.		
To continue, click Next. If you would like to select a different folder, clic	k Browse.	
C:\Program Files\B247PRO	Browse.	
At least 249.4 MB of free disk space is required.		
< Back Next >	c	ancel

- 8. Select the program group to which the software will be installed. The default setting is "Anyone who uses this computer". The following explains the difference between the two settings:
  - Anyone who uses this computer the Advanced Client (B247PRO) System Tray icon will be available to all Windows users and backup notifications will be displayed on the Windows System Tray. For more information, please refer to <u>Chapter 10.11 System Tray</u>.
  - Me Only the Advanced Client (B247PRO) System Tray icon will not be available and backup notifications will not be displayed on the Windows System Tray.

#### NOTE

Once the program group setting has been chosen and the installation completed; if you need to change the setting, this will require uninstallation and re-installation of the application.

Click **Next** to proceed.



📩 Sei	tup - B247PRO — 🗌 🗙
Se	lect Additional Tasks
	Which additional tasks should be performed?
	Select the additional tasks you would like Setup to perform while installing B247PRO, then click Next.
	Please select the program group to which the software will be installed
	<ul> <li>Anyone who uses this computer</li> </ul>
	O Me Only
	< Back Next > Cancel
The in	stalla <mark>tion will start after you cli</mark> ck <b>Install</b> .
💼 Se	tup - B247PRO — 🗆 🗙
Re	ady to Install
	Setup is now ready to begin installing B247PRO on your computer.
	Click Install to continue with the installation, or click Back if you want to review or change any settings.
	Destination location:
	C:\Program Files\B247PRO
	Additional tasks:
	Please select the program group to which the software will be installed Anyone who uses this computer
	< Back Install Cancel

9.



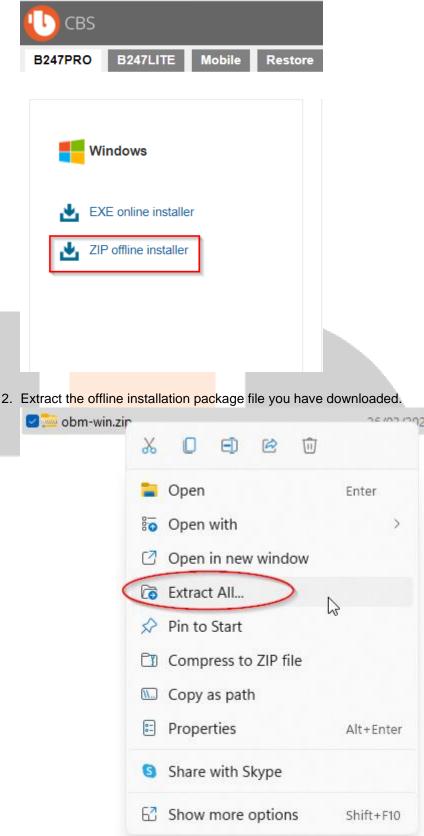
10. The component files will be downloaded first during installation.

	😋 Setup - B247PRO	– 🗆 X
	Downloading additional Please wait while setup	files o downloads additional files
	Total progress:	69.21 MB / 157.45 MB (43%)
	Current file:	3.03 MB / 5.26 MB (57%)
	File:	app-inst-win-obm.7z
	Speed:	2.0 MB/s
	Status:	Downloading
	Elapsed time:	00:00:36
	Remaining time:	00:00:45
		Next > Cancel
11.	Click <b>Finish</b> to complete t	he installation.
	📷 Setup - B247PRO	– – ×
		Completing the B247PRO Setup Wizard
		Setup has finished installing B247PRO on your computer. The application may be launched by selecting the installed icons.
		Click Finish to exit Setup.
		Launch B247PRO
	<b>D</b> PRO	
		Finish



#### 6.2.2 Offline Installation using ZIP offline installer

1. Go to the download page of Backup247 Technical Support Team 's website and download the Advanced Client (B247PRO) **ZIP offline installer**.





3. Select a destination then extract the files.

		×
$\leftarrow$	🔤 Extract Compressed (Zipped) Folders	
	Select a Destination and Extract Files	
	Files will be extracted to this folder:	
	C:\Users\Backu\Downloads\B247PRO-win Browse	
	Show extracted files when complete	
	Extract Cance	:

- 4. Launch the installer named obm-win.exe which you have extracted from the zip format file.
- 5. Click Run and remaining steps are exactly same as section 6.2.1

# 6.3 Advanced Client (B247PRO) Services

33

The Advanced Client (B247PRO) Services is a key component which regulates and controls several important functions on Advanced Client (B247PRO).

Function	Description	
Scheduled Backups	Ensures that backup jobs which are setup to run at a certain date and/or time are started.	
Continuous Backups (Windows platform only)	Ensures that Continuous backups are run according to the backup interval.	
Mobile Backup Server (MBS)	Ensures that registered mobile devices can perform backups to Advanced Client (B247PRO).	
	The MBS will be activated when a mobile device is registered for mobile backup on Advanced Client (B247PRO).	
	The MBS will be deactivated when all mobile devices have been deregistered from the mobile backup settings and the Advanced Client (B247PRO) services is restarted.	

Therefore, it is very important to ensure the Advanced Client (B247PRO) Services are running after:

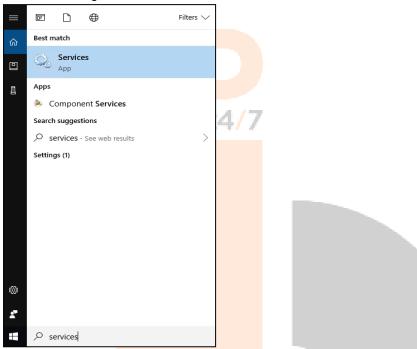
• a new Advanced Client (B247PRO) installation



- a Advanced Client (B247PRO) software update •
- the machine was rebooted •
- the machine is powered on •
- the machine wakes up from hibernation or standby mode •

Otherwise, all of the functions above will stop working.

To check if the Advanced Client (B247PRO) Scheduler Service is running properly on the local machine, go to start menu and search for Services.



Look for the Backup247 Online Backup Manager Services on the list. The status should be "Running", and the Startup Type should be "Automatic".

Genices			- 0 3	BACKU	P247 AD\	ANCE CLI	ENT Services Properties (Local Co
File Action View	w Help			General	Log On	Recovery	Dependencies
(e e) 🖥 🗐	à 🗟 📲 📰 🕨 🖩 🖬 🕨						
🔍 Services (Local)	C. Services (Local)			Servic	e name:	OBSchedu	
	BACKUP247 ADVANCE CLIENT	Name	Description	Displa	y name:	BACKUP2	47 ADVANCE CLIENT Services
	Services	QActiveX Installer (AvInstSV)	Provides User Account Control validation for the installation of ActiveX controls from the Inter-	 Descri	ption:		ckup, Continuous Backup and Scheduler or BACKUP247 ADVANCE CLIENT
	Stop the service Restart the service	Adobe Acrobat Update Service Agent Activation Runtime_23bb4f AlUoyn Router Service	Adobe Acrobat Updater keeps your Adobe software up to date. Runtime for activating conversational agent applications Routes Alloyn messages for the local Alloyn clients. If this service is stopped the Alloyn clien	1 00110	o executab ogram Files		\bin\cbpsX64.exe"
	Description: Mobile Backup, Continuous Backup and Scheduler Services	<ul> <li>AnyDesk Service</li> <li>App Readiness</li> <li>Application Identity</li> </ul>	AngDesk support service. Gets apps ready for use the first time a user signs in to this PC and when adding new apps. Determines and verifies the identity of an application. Disabling this service will prevent AppLo	Startu	o type:	Automatic	~
	for BACKUP247 ADVANCE CLENT	Application Information     Application Layer Gateway Service     AppX Deployment Service (AppXSVC)     AtherosSvc	Facilitates the running of interactive applications with additional administrative prinleges. If this Provides support for 3rd party protocol plug-ies for internet Connection Staring Provides infractuture support for deploying Store applications. This service is started on de		e status: Start	Running Stop	
		Auto Time Zone Updater AVCTP service Background Intelligent Transfer Service	Automatically sets the system time zone. This is Audio Video Control Transport Protocol service Transfers files in the background using idle network bandwidth. If the service is disabled then	from h			ameters that apply when you start the service
		Background Tasks Infrastructure Service	Windows infrastructure service that controls which background tasks can run on the system. Mobile Backup, Continuous Backup and Scheduler Services for BACKUP24T ADVANCE CLENT				OK Cancel Apply
		Base Filtering Engine	The Base Filtering Engine (BFE) is a service that manages firewall and Internet Protocol security				



### 6.4 Mobile Backup Server (MBS) Status Check and Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app Connection Check

Before starting a backup on your mobile device, check the following first:

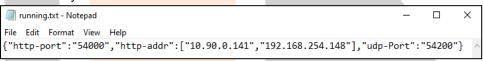
1. Check HTTP port, IP address and UDP port in the **running.txt** file. Go to C:\Program Data\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\mbs

📕 🛃 📑 🖛 🛛 mbs					-	
File Home Share	View					~
← → ~ ↑ 🚞 <mark>C:\</mark> P	rogramData\l	3247PRO\mbs	~	ට 🔎 Search	mbs	
	^	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size	
📌 Quick access		chn.dat	11/19/2020 3:10 PM	DAT File		4 KB
	*	chn.lck	11/19/2020 5:01 PM	LCK File		0 KB
E Desktop	* [	running.txt	11/19/2020 5:02 PM	Text Document		1 KB
Documents	*	user.dat	11/19/2020 5:13 PM	DAT File		1 KB
Pictures						

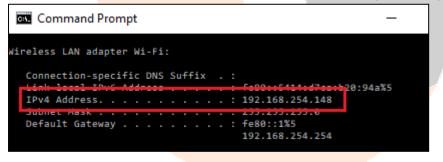
**NOTE** If the "running.txt" file does not exist, then the MBS is not running. Restart the Advanced Client (B247PRO) services.

35

After opening the file, it will show the HTTP port, IP address and UDP port which are in actual use by the MBS.



2. Open a command prompt and check if the IP address captured in the running.txt file is the correct IP address of the machine where Advanced Client (B247PRO) is installed.





3. To verify the actual HTTP port used by MBS, type the command

C:'	<pre>\&gt;netstat</pre>	-an	more
<u> </u>	1		

es. Ad	ministrator: Command Pro	ompt	- 1
C:\WINDO	WS\system32>netstat -ar	nmore	
Active C	Connections		
Proto	Local Address	Foreign Address	State
TCP	0.0.0.0:80	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:135	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:445	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:1801	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:2103	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:2105	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:2107	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:5040	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:5357	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:7777	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49664	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49665	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49666	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49667	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49668	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49669	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49673	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49674	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49732	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCD	0 0 0 0+4072E	0 0 0 0 0	I TOTENTING
TCP	0.0.0.0:54000	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
T CP	10.30.0.141.133	0.0.0.0.0	LISTENING CETTOL ROUTE
TCP	10.90.0.141:56136	10.3.0.120:21	ESTABLISHED
TCP	127.0.0.1:4001	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING

- 4. Make sure that your firewall setting allows network traffic through the following HTTP and UDP ports to ensure that the communication between your machine and mobile device is successful: HTTP Port: 54000 to 54099 and UDP Port: 54200 to 54299. Otherwise, mobile backup and restore will not work.
- 5. To perform a status check on the MBS. Open a browser on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine and type the IP address, followed by the TCP port.

For example: If the HTTP port used is 54000, http://192.168.254.148:54000, you should get the following result which shows "Running" status. This means the MBS is running.

In the Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine





6. To run a connection test between the mobile device and machine open a browser in your mobile device and type the IP address followed by the TCP port.

For example: If the HTTP port used is 55000, http://192.168.254.148:54000, you should get the following result which shows "Running" status. This means the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app can successfully connect to the MBS and both backup and restore can proceed on the mobile device.

**A** 192.168.254.148:54000 2 : 仚 Running 24/7

In the mobile device



# 7 Register device for 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO)

There are two types of Authenticators that can be used to register a device for 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO):

- Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator
- Third-party TOTP Authenticator (e.g., Microsoft Authenticator, Google Authenticator, Authy, Duo, LastPass Authenticator, iOS 15 Built-in Two-Factor Authenticator, etc.)

The 2FA registration steps using the different types of authenticators will be discussed in this chapter.

- Using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator
  - Supports two types of authentications:
    - i) Push Notification
    - ii) <mark>TOT</mark>P
  - > Can be configured to support two 2FA modes:
    - i) Push Notification and TOTP (default mode); or
    - ii) TOTP only
- Using Microsoft Authenticator
- Using Google Authenticator

## 7.1 Using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator

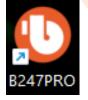
To register a device for 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB), here are the two scenarios:

- <u>Without Mobile Add-on Module</u>
- With Mobile Add-on Module

#### 7.1.1 Without Mobile Add-on Module

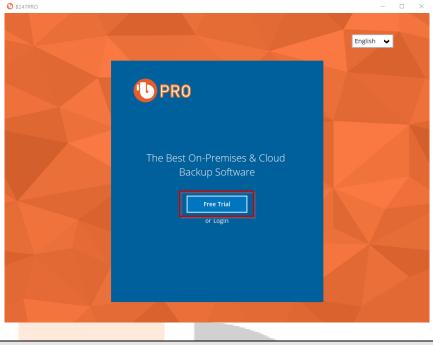
To register a device for 2FA without Mobile Add-on Module follow the steps below:

1. A shortcut icon of Advanced Client (B247PRO) will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.





 The Free Trial registration option may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account, proceed to <u>Appendix E</u>. Otherwise, click Login if you already have an Advanced Client (B247PRO) account.



**NOTE** The **Free Trial** registration option may not be available. This depends on how your account was created. Please contact us for more information.

3. The **Show advanced option** may not be available if the backup server settings are already setup by support team. Please contact us for more information.

	English 🗸
Login name MobileUser Password	
••••••	
Show advanced option	οκ

If **Show advanced option** is clicked, this will be displayed; Please note, IP address below isn't the production IP address, we decided to keep it hidden for security reason.



Backup Server	
https 🖌 10.3.121.11	~
Proxy (HTTP)	
Use proxy to access the Internet Off	

4. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by us or created during Free Trail Registration. Then, click **OK** to log in.

English	
Login	
Login name	
MobileUser	
Password	
Save password	
Show advanced option OK	

#### NOTE

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.



5. You will have the option to set up your 2FA. Click **Setup Now**.





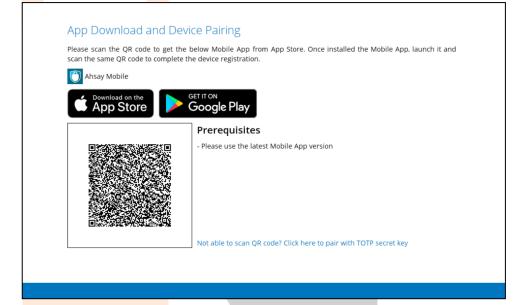
- 7. Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) supports two types of authentication method:
  - Push Notification
  - ➤ TOTP

Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) can be configured to support two 2FA modes:

- Push Notification and TOTP (default mode) or
- ➤ TOTP only

#### Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)

i. To configure Push Notification and TOTP 2FA with Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB), simply scan the displayed QR code using the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.



ii. In this example, the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app is installed on a mobile device named "Androidv10".



🚯 B247 Mobile	
Scan the QR code displayed in your applica (supports two-factor authentication, mob device backup etc.)	
Loung.	
Cancel	
Not able to scan QR code?	

Tap **OK** to continue.

QR Code detected Register Androidv10 v		ser ?
	CANCEL	ок

Once the device is successfully paired, the following message will be displayed in the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app. You can set up a recovery number here that will be used in case of "Authentication Recovery" procedure by tapping **OK**. Otherwise, tap **LATER** to set it up later on.

For first time activati needs to pair with a number for account to setup now.	verified phone	е
	LATER	ок

 iii. After successful scan of the QR code, you have now registered Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for Push Notification and TOTP 2FA. Click OK to continue.

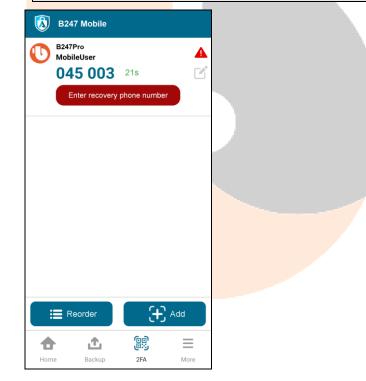


Mobile	Setup			
You have re	gistered Androidv10 for th	ne following feature:		
📱 Two-F	ctor Authentication			
-				
				_
				ОК

#### Phone number verification for account recovery

iv. In the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, go to 2FA then enter the phone number for account recovery. Tap Enter recovery phone number.

**NOTE** Although push notification and TOTP will still work if the recovery phone number registration is not completed, it is still strongly recommended to complete **step iv** as you will not be able to access the Advanced Client (B247PRO) if you lose your mobile device which also means loss of access to backup data.



Select your country code and enter your phone number. Tap **Send SMS** verification code.



<
B247 Mobile MobileUser
Enter a valid phone number, you will need this for account recovery.
+63 💌
Send SMS verification code
Done
Paraguay (+595)
Peru (+51)
Philippines (+63)
Pitcairn Islands (+64)
Poland (+48)

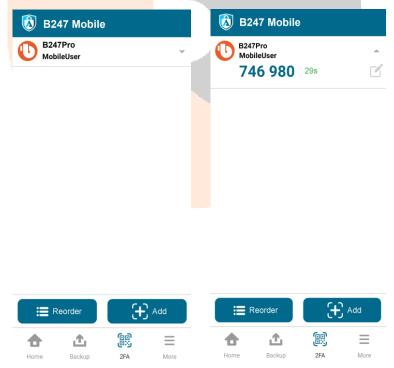




B247 Mobile MobileUser			<sup>Mobile</sup> IeUser	
Enter a valid phone number, you will need this for account recovery.	Enter a	valid phone i this for acco	number, you unt recovery	will need
+63 💌	+63	-		
Resend in 92s				
Verification code	Verifica	tion success	ful	
ASFA - 245748 (04:32)				ок
	1		3	
	4	5	6	
	7	8	9	
	,	0		
xample of verification code:				
Verification Code: ASFA-2	<u>45748</u>			

Enter the verification code sent to your mobile device.

Your phone number for account recovery is successfully verified.





#### TOTP only

i. To configure a TOTP only 2FA with Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB), click the "Not able to scan QR code? Click here to pair with TOTP secret key" link.

Please scan the QR code to get t scan the same QR code to complet	he below Mobile App from App Store. Once installed the Mobile App, launch it and e the device registration.
C Ahsay Mobile	
Download on the App Store	Get IT ON Google Play
	Prerequisites
	- Please use the latest Mobile App version
	Not able to scan QR code? Click here to pair with TOTP secret key

ii. After clicking the "Not able to scan QR code? Click here to pair with TOTP secret key" link, the QR code for the TOTP only authenticator will be displayed.

Please scan the QR code to get the l scan the same QR code to complete th Ahsay Mobile	below Mobile App from App Store. Once installed the Mobile App, launch it and he device registration.
	Geogle Play
	Show Secret Key Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app (00:00:26) Display name: B247 Mobile



To show the secret key, click the **Show Secret Key** link to display the 16-character alphanumeric secret key. The display name will be "B247 Mobile" by default.

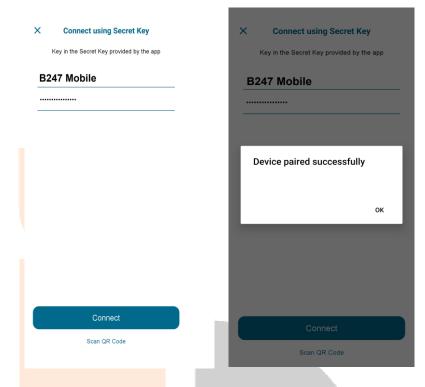
Secret Key: QIP2 6Y3P UGFS WZ7T Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app (00:00:24) Display name: B247 Mobile

iii. In the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, go to **2FA**. Tap the **Not able to scan QR code?** link.

🚯 B247 Mobile	X Connect using Secret Key
Scan the QR code displayed in your application (supports two-factor authentication, mobile device backup etc.)	Key in the Secret Key provided by the app
	Username
	Secret Key
Cancel	Connect
Not able to scan QR code?	Scan QR Code



 iv. Enter the Username and Secret Key shown in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) then tap **Connect**. Once the device is paired successfully, tap **OK** to continue.



v. Enter the one-time passcode from the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.

#### App Download and Device Pairing

Please scan the QR code to get the below Mobile App from App Store. Once installed the Mobile App, launch it and scan the same QR code to complete the device registration.





49



Example of the one-time passcode generated by Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB):





vi. Once the registration is successful, the following screen will be displayed. You have now registered Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for TOTP only 2FA.

#### Mobile Setup You have registered Ahsay Mobile for the following feature:

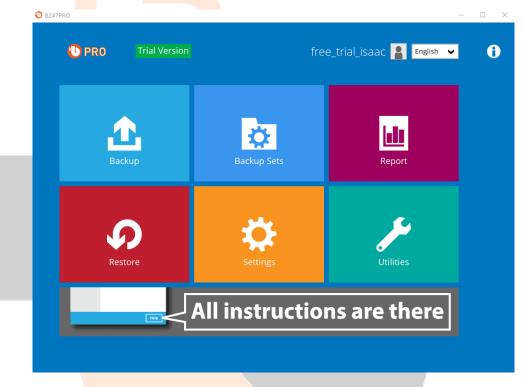
Two-Factor Authentication

ОК



NOTE In case device pairing takes a while, session timeout message will be displayed. Just click OK to resume with the device pairing. Mobile Setup Due to session timeout, Two-Factor Authentication feature failed to be configured. Click [OK] to configure the feature again.

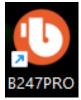
8. After successful pairing, the following screen will appear.



#### 7.1.2 With Mobile Add-on Module

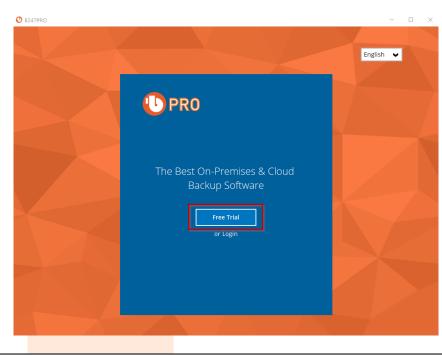
To register a device for 2FA with Mobile Add-on Module enabled, please follow the steps below:

1. A shortcut icon of Advanced Client (B247PRO) will be available on your desktop after installation. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. The Free Trial registration option may be displayed when you login for the first time. If you want to create a free trial account, please proceed to <u>Appendix E</u>. Otherwise, click **Login** if you already have an Advanced Client (B247PRO) account.





#### NOTE

The **Free Trial** registration option may not be available. This depends on how your account was created. Please contact us for more information.

3. The **Show advanced option** may not be available if the backup server settings are already setup by us. Please contact us for more information.

	English 🗸
Login name	
MobileUser	
Password	
•••••	
Save password	
Show advanced option	к

If **Show advanced option** is clicked, this will be displayed; Please note, IP address below isn't our production IP address, we decided to keep it hidden for security reason.



Backup Server	
https 🖌 10.3.121.11	~
Proxy (HTTP)	
Use proxy to access the Internet Off	

4. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by our support team. Then, click **OK** to log in.

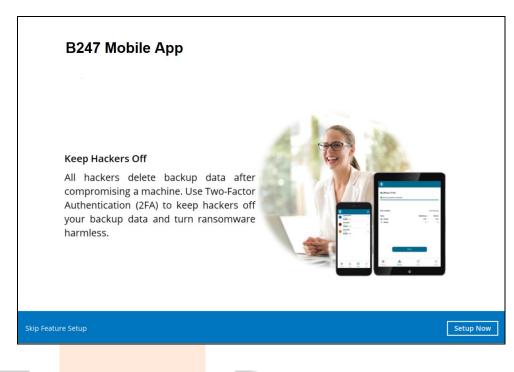
	English	~
Login		
Login name		
MobileUser		
Password		
•••••		
Save password		
Show advanced option	ок	

NOTE

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.

5. You will have the option to set up your 2FA and mobile backup if the **Mobile Add**on **Module is enabled** in the backup account. Click **Setup Now**.





6. Download the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app from the App Store / Google Play Store. Ensure that the displayed Prerequisites are met.

7. By using the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, tap **Next** and scan the QR code displayed in Advanced Client (B247PRO).



	🕲 B247 Mobile
	Scan the QR code displayed in your application (supports two-factor authentication, mobile device backup etc.)
B247 Mobile	
English	
Next	Cancel
Tap <b>OK</b> to continue.	
QR Code detected!	
Register Androidv10 with MobileUser ?	
CANCEL OK	



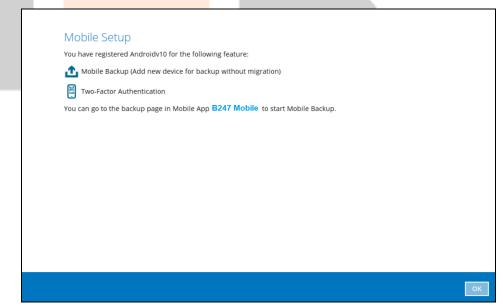
Once the device is successfully paired, the following message will be displayed in the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app. Click **OK** to continue.

Device paired successfully You may now configure the device content e.g Photos, Video, 2FA Accounts(if registered) to be included for backup

Once the device is successfully paired, the following message will be displayed in the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app. You can set up a recovery number here that will be used in case of the "Authentication Recovery" procedure by tapping **OK**. You may refer to <u>Phone number verification for account recovery</u> in **Chapter 7.1.1** for the following setup. Otherwise, tap **LATER** to set it up later on.



8. After successful scan of the QR code, you have now registered Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for 2FA (Push Notification and TOTP) and Mobile Backup. Click **OK** to continue.



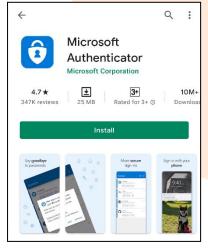


- 9. After successful pairing, the following screen will appear.

# 57 7.2 Using Microsoft Authenticator

To register a device for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Microsoft Authenticator, please follow the steps below:

1. Download and install the Microsoft Authenticator from the Play Store for Android devices or the App Store for iOS devices.



2. Launch the Microsoft Authenticator app.



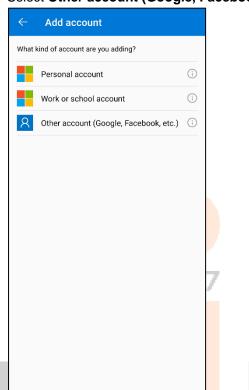
3. Tap Add account.



		Authenticator	- E						
For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help section in the menu. Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery		
Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Let's add your first account	t!
Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	Add account Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account. Begin recovery	For further assistance, see the Help in the menu.	section
Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Begin recovery	Add account	
n p*	n p*	n p*	n p*	n p*	n p*	n p*	n p*	Already have a backup? Sign in to your recovery account.	:
Authenticator	Authenticator Passwords	Authenticator Passwords	Authenticator Passwords	Authenticator	Authenticator	Authenticator	Authenticator Passwords	Begin recovery	
								Authenticator Passwo	



4. Select Other account (Google, Facebook, etc.).



5. Allow permission to take pictures and record video.

$\leftarrow$ Add account	
۲	
Allow <b>Authenticator</b> to take pictures and record video?	
ALLOW	
DENY	
OR ENTER CODE MANUALLY	



6. Set up the account by selecting from the following methods: Scan the QR code or Enter code manually.

#### Method 1: Scan the QR code

i. Scan the QR code on Advanced Client (B247PRO).



Example of the displayed QR code:

app to scan the QR code to comple	te the device registration.
Download on the App Store	Google Play
	Show Secret Key Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app Display name: Microsoft Authenticator



ii. The Advanced Client (B247PRO) account is successfully added to Microsoft Authenticator and the mobile device is registered in Advanced Client (B247PRO).

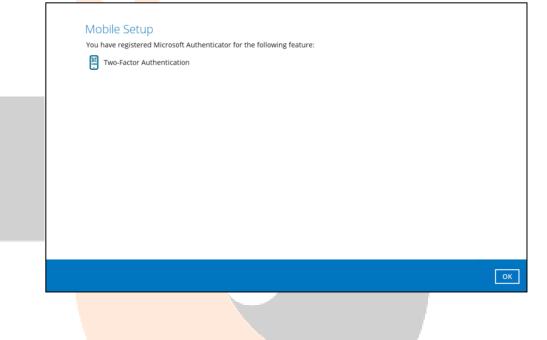




Example of the one-time passcode generated:



iv. The device is successfully registered for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Microsoft Authenticator. Click **OK** to continue.







#### Method 2: Enter Code Manually

i. Tap OR ENTER CODE MANUALLY.



ii. Click the **Show Secret Key** link in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to display the Secret Key which must be entered manually in the Microsoft Authenticator.

Show Secret Key Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app Display name: Microsoft Authenticator	
	Cancel
Secret Key: ZUGD UWSE UFAH FOI4 Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app (00:00:07) Display name: Microsoft Authenticator	
	Cancel



iii. On the Microsoft Authenticator app, input an account name, then enter the displayed Secret Key in the Advanced Client (B247PRO). Tap **FINISH** to proceed.

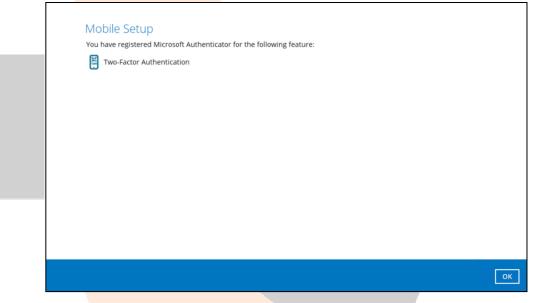
Acco	unt name						
Secre	et key						
		FINISH					
-	-						
$\leftarrow$	Add ac	count					
Mobi	ileUser						
ZUG	DUWSEUFA	HFOI4					
				and the second se			
		FINISH					
		FINISH					
		int is added	d to Microsoft				יססי
		int is added	<mark>l to</mark> Microsoft t <mark>he</mark> authentica				PR(
	ode gene App Dow	Int is added rated from t	<mark>the</mark> authentica evice Pairing	ator app to	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor Au app to scan th	Int is added rated from t nload and Da uthentication is enab	<mark>the</mark> authentica	rd access to your	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor AL app to scan th Microsof	Int is added rated from t Inload and Du uthentication is enab te QR code to comple ft Authenticator	the authentication evice Pairing evice Pairing pled for helping safegua ete the device registration	rd access to your	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor AL app to scan th Microsof	Int is added rated from t /nload and Do uthentication is enab	the authentica evice Pairing oled for helping safegua	rd access to your	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor AL app to scan th Microsof	Int is added rated from t Inload and Du uthentication is enab te QR code to comple ft Authenticator	the authentication evice Pairing evice Pairing pled for helping safegua ete the device registration	rd access to your	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor AL app to scan th Microsof	Int is added rated from t Inload and Du uthentication is enab te QR code to comple ft Authenticator	the authentication evice Pairing evice Pairing pled for helping safegua ete the device registration	ator app to	Advanced	Client (B247	
	App Dow Two-Factor AL app to scan th Microsof	Int is added rated from t Inload and Du uthentication is enab te QR code to comple ft Authenticator	the authentic: evice Pairing oled for helping safegua ete the device registrati Geogle Play Secret Key: ZUGE	rd access to your	Advanced	Client (B247	



Example of the one-time passcode generated:



v. The device is successfully registered for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Microsoft Authenticator. Click **OK** to continue.



7. After successful pairing, the following screen will appear.

65



🕚 в247	7PRO				- 🗆 X
	🕛 PRO	Trial Version	fre	ee_trial_isaac 🞴 English	<b>•</b> 1
	4	1	🌣 🖓		
	Bac	kup	Backup Sets	Report	
	<b>F</b>		<b>*</b>	Je -	
	Rest	tore	Settings	Utilities	
			All instructio	ns are there	

# 7.3 Using Google Authenticator

To register a device for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Google Authenticator, please follow the steps below:

1. Download and install the Google Authenticator from the Play Store for Android devices or the App Store for iOS devices.

				•	
¢	Google Authenti Google LLC	cator			$\cup$
3.9★ 330K reviews	5.8 MB Rate	<b>3+</b> d for 3+ 0	50N Downle	1000 C	
	Install				
-00 <b>*</b> 12 <b>5</b>			1	83	
G		•• ••••	e Se Sogeri	tio yau fint ai manana i ai manana i ai manana	
CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR OF	AND	0	a Se September Market	tap your first as not a stream of the manufacture of the stream of the	
Stronger security with Google Authenticator	Simple setup using your camera	• ***** A unique code used to sign in	ti Bel Serve J Seguer B	tap yaur first an nan einer vereinen einer einer einer einer einer einer	

2. Launch the Google Authenticator app.



3. Set up the account by selecting from the following methods: Scan the QR code or Enter a setup key manually.



### Method 1: Scan the QR code

i.

ii.

<u>e</u>			
Setup your first account			
Use the QR code or setup key in your 2FA setting Google or third-party service). If you're having tro go to g.co/2sv			
Scan a QR code			
Enter a setup key			
Import existing accounts?			
ow permission to take pic	tures a	and record v	ide
ow permission to take pic	tures a	and record v	ide
ow permission to take pic	tu <mark>res a</mark>	and record v	ide
ow permission to take pic	tu <mark>res a</mark>	and record v	ide
ow permission to take pic	tu <mark>res a</mark>	and record v	ide
ow permission to take pic	tures a	and record v	ide
•	tures a	and record v	ide
	tures a	and record v	ide
Allow Authenticator to take	tures a	and record v	ide





iii. Scan the QR code on Advanced Client (B247PRO).



### Example of the displayed QR code:

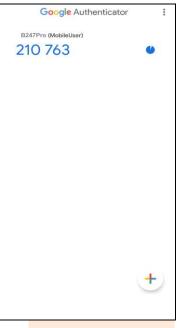
68

#### App Download and Device Pairing Two-Factor Authentication is enabled for helping safeguard access to your account, please use the below authenticator app to scan the QR code to complete the device registration. Google Authenticator Top Download on the Coogle Play



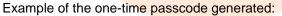


iv. The Advanced Client (B247PRO) account is successfully added to Google Authenticator and the mobile device is registered in Advanced Client (B247PRO).



v. Once the account is added to Google Authenticator, enter the one-time passcode generated from the authenticator app to Advanced Client (B247PRO).

App Download and Device Pairing Two-Factor Authentication is enabled for helping safeguard access to your account, please use the below authenticator
app to scan the QR code to complete the device registration.
Google Authenticator
App Store
Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app 2 1 0 7 6 3 (00:00:15) Display name: Google Authenticator
Can





vi. The device is successfully registered for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Google Authenticator. Click **OK** to continue.



Mobile Setup	
You have registered Google Authenticator for the following feature:	
Two-Factor Authentication	
	ОК
29/7	

## Method 2: Enter a setup key manually

i.	Tap <mark>Enter a setup key</mark> .	
	$\leftarrow$	
	2	
	Setup your first account	
	Use the QR code or setup key in your 2FA settings (b Google or third-party service). If you're having troubl go to g.co/2sv	
	Scan a QR code	
	Enter a setup key	
	Import existing accounts?	

ii. Click the **Show Secret Key** link in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to display the Secret Key which must be entered manually on the Google Authenticator.



Show Secret Key Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app Output Display name: Google Authenticator
Cancel
Secret Key: ZUGJ KYFG CKI2 WGJY Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app Display name: Google Authenticator
Cancel





iii. On the Google Authenticator app, input an account name, then enter the displayed Secret Key in the Advanced Client (B247PRO). Tap **Add** to proceed.

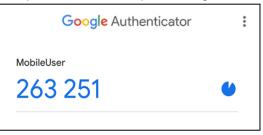
Enter account details
Account
Кеу
Time based 🔻 Add
Enter account details
Account MobileUser
Key ZUGJKYFGCKI2WGJY
Time based 🔻 Add
Once the account is added to Google Authenticator, enter the one-time passcode generated from the authenticator app to Advanced Client (B247PRO).
App Download and Device Pairing Two-Factor Authentication is enabled for helping safeguard access to your account, please use the below authenticator app to scan the QR code to complete the device registration. Composed on the Composed on t

247

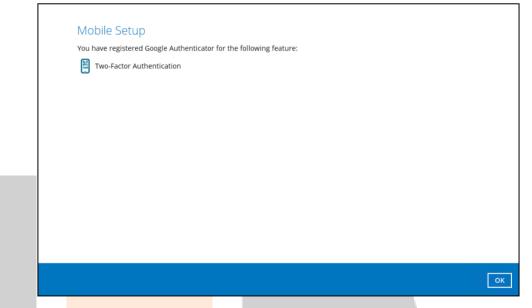
Cancel



Example of the one-time passcode generated:

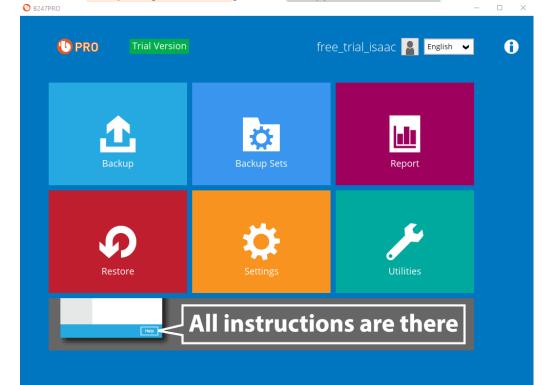


v. The device is successfully registered for TOTP 2FA in Advanced Client (B247PRO) using Google Authenticator. Click **OK** to continue.



4. After successful pairing, the following screen will appear.

73





# 8 Logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO)

Login steps without 2FA and with 2FA using the different types of authenticators will be discussed in this chapter.

- Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) without 2FA
- Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Backup247 Mobile
   (B247MOB) Authenticator
  - Push Notification and TOTP 2FA
  - TOTP only 2FA
- Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Microsoft Authenticator
- Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Google Authenticator
- Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Twilio

# 8.1 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) without 2FA

When logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) without Two-Factor Authentication, follow the steps below:

1. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by Backup247 Technical Support Team . Then, click **OK** to log in.

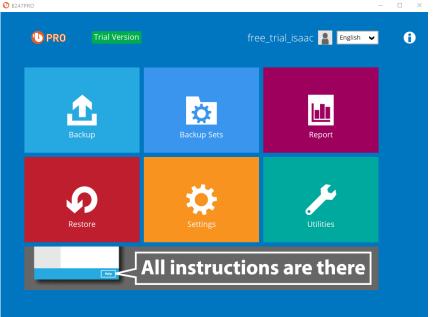
	English 🗸
Login	
Login name	
MobileUser	
Password	
•••••	
Save password	
	ок

#### NOTE

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.



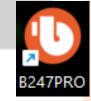
3. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



# 8.2 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator

When logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with Two-Factor Authentication using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator, please follow the steps below:

1. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



75



2. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by Backup247 Technical Support Team . Then, click **OK** to log in.

		Eng	ish 🗸
	<b>PRO</b>		
Login			
Login name			
MobileUser			
Password			
•••••			
Save password			
Show advanced option		ок	
	NOTE		

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.

Please refer to the **Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login** of the <u>Backup247 Mobile</u> (<u>B247MOB</u>) <u>User Guide for Android and iOS</u> if you are experiencing problems logging into Advanced Client (B247PRO) with Two-Factor Authentication using Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app.

3. Select the authentication method to continue with the login.

### • Push Notification and TOTP (default mode)

Example of the 2FA alert screen on Advanced Client (B247PRO) after login with correct username and password:

	Two-Factor Authentication
	Please approve notification request in one of registered Authenticator App.
	" Waiting for response (00:04:22)
	Authenticate with one-time password
Unable to	) login

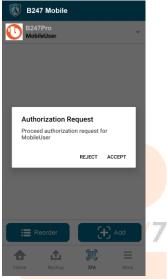




1

Push notification is the default 2FA mode. Accept the login request on the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app to complete the login.

Example of the login request sent to the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB):



However, if push notification is not working or you prefer to use one-time password instead, click the "Authenticate with one-time password" link, then input the one-time password generated from Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) to complete the login.

Two-Factor Authentication
Please approve notification request in one of registered Authenticator App.
Waiting for response (00:04:05)
Alternatively, input the one-time passcode generated in your Authenticator App.
2 5 3 4 1 0 (00:00:20)
Unable to login





Example of the one-time password generated by Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB):

🔕 в:	247 Mobil	e	
	47Pro		A
2	53 410	28s	
:= 1	Reorder	<b>4</b>	Add
•	<u>ئ</u>	89	=

• TOTP only

Example of the 2FA alert screen on Advanced Client (B247PRO) after login with correct username and password.

Input the one-time password generated by Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) to complete the login.

Two-Factor Authentication Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app	
4 5 9 1 2 8 (00	:00:19)
Unable to login	
Unable to login	



(B247 MOB):			
TOTP (Manual input)			
B247Pro 459 128 28s			
	_		
	7		
	-		
E Reorder			
<b>☆</b> ▲ 😹 =			
Home Backup 2FA More	J		
	NOIE		
If you are unable to log i	NOTE n using any of the aut	hentication method, re	efer to Chapter
If you are unable to log i <u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u>	n using any of the aut		efer to <u>Chapter</u>
9 Unable to log in to Adv	n using any of the aut /anced Client (B247P	RO) with 2FA.	efer to <u>Chapter</u>
	n using any of the aut /anced Client (B247P	RO) with 2FA.	efer to <u>Chapter</u>
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	RO) with 2FA.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
<u>9 Unable to log in to Adv</u> succe <mark>ssful login, the follow</mark>	n using any of the aut <u>/anced Client (B247P</u> <mark>/ing scree</mark> n will appe	<u>RO) with 2FA</u> . ear.	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow PRO Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ving screen will appe fi	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow PRO Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ving screen will appe fi	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow PRO Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ving screen will appe fi	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow PRO Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ving screen will appe fi	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Add successful login, the follow PRO Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ving screen will appe fi	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P ring screen will appe f f Backup Sets	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac 💽 Eng Report	- 0
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P) ving screen will appe f f Eackup Sets Eackup Sets	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac P Ene Report Utilities	Jish V
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P) ving screen will appe f f Eackup Sets Eackup Sets	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac 💽 Eng Report	Jish V
9 Unable to log in to Adv successful login, the follow Trial Version	n using any of the aut vanced Client (B247P) ving screen will appe f f Eackup Sets Eackup Sets	RO) with 2FA. ear. ree_trial_isaac P Ene Report Utilities	Jish V

Example of the one-time password generated by Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB):

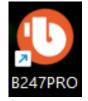
4.



# 8.3 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Microsoft Authenticator

When logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) <u>with Two-Factor Authentication</u> using Microsoft Authenticator, please follow the steps below:

1. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by Backup247 Technical Support Team . Then, click **OK** to log in.

		English 🗸
Login Login name	<b>)</b>	
MobileUser Password		
Save password		
Show advanced option	ок	
NOTE		
l option may vary in the conte	ext of vulnerability that	

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.



3. Enter the one-time passcode generated from the Microsoft Authenticator app.

Two-Factor A	Authentication
Enter one-time pass	scode generated from authenticator app (00:00:08)
able to login	

Example of the one-time passcode generated:

← 8 B247Pro t7	
One-time passwords enabled You can use the one-time password codes generated by this app to verify your sign-ins	
One-time password code 594 621	
Two-Factor Authentication Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticat 5 9 4 6 2	or app (00:00:21)
Unable to login	

4. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



🕐 B24	7PRO		- 0	×
	PR0 Trial Version	fre	e_trial_isaac 🚪 English 🗸	i
	Backup	Backup Sets	Report	
	Restore	Settings	Utilities	
	NO C	All instructio	ns are there	

# 8.4 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Google Authenticator

When logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with Two-Factor Authentication using Google Authenticator, please follow the steps below:

1. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



2. Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by Backup247 Technical Support Team . Then, click **OK** to log in.



		English 🗸
	Login	
	Login name	
	MobileUser	
	Password	
	•••••	
	Save password	
	how advanced option	ок
	NOTE	
The Save password	option may vary in the context of	vulnerability that it introduces.
		our support team if you have any
concerns.		
ter the one-t <mark>ime pa</mark>	sscode generated from the G	oogle Authenticator app.
Two-Factor Auth	nentication	
Enter one-time passcode	generated from authenticator app	
	(00:00:08)	

3.

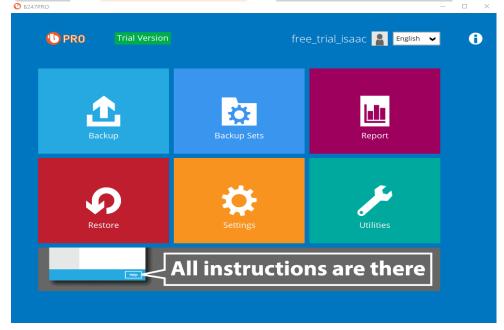


Example of the one-time passcode generated:



	Two-Factor Authentication Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app 2 1 0 7 6 3 (00:00:15)
Unable to lo	ogin

4. After successful login, the following screen will appear.



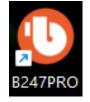




# 8.5 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA using Twilio

When logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) for user accounts using Twilio, please follow the steps below:

1. Double-click the icon to launch the application.



 Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account provided by Backup247 Technical Support Team . Then, click OK to log in.

	English 🗸
Login	
Login name	
MobileUser	
Password	
Save password	
Forgot password	
Show advanced option	ок

#### NOTE

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.





3. Select your phone number to receive the passcode.

Two-Factor Authentication	
Please select phone number to receive passcode via SMS message to continue login. Philippines (+63) - *****6123	
	Cancel Help

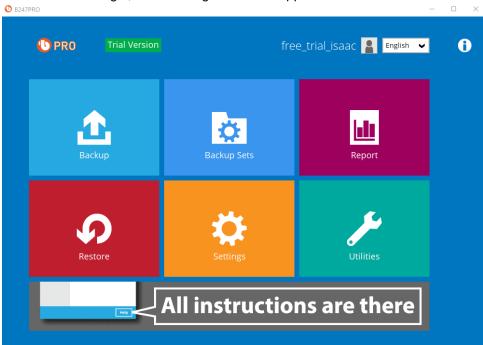
4. Enter the passcode and click **Verify** to log in.

(00:04:30)





5. After successful login, the following screen will appear.







# 9 Unable to log in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) with 2FA

Advanced Client (B247PRO) supports Unable to login feature for users who were not able to accept the notification request from the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app and/or cannot obtain the TOTP code from Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) on the subsequent login to Advanced Client (B247PRO).

Here are the three scenarios after clicking the Unable to login link:

- No recovery number was registered on Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for the 2FA account
- "Authentication Recovery" procedure
- Unable to perform the "Authentication Recovery" procedure

Please approve notification request in one of registered Authenticator App. ** Waiting for response (00:04:50) Authenticate with one-time password		ctor Authenti				
				red Authenticator Ap	p.	
Authenticate with one-time password						
	Authentical	e with one-time pass	sword			
	_					

No recovery number was registered on Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for the 2FA account

If no recovery number was registered on Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for the 2FA account, then the following message will be displayed "Please contact your backup server administrator for assistance" in gaining access to your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account.

1.



Pl 	WO-Factor Authentication lease approve notification request in one of registered Authenticator App. Waiting for response (00:04:58) uthenticate with one-time password	
	Please contact your backup server administrator for assistance.	

#### "Authentication Recovery" procedure

If a recovery number was registered on Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) for the 2FA account, then select the registered mobile device to perform the following "Authentication Recovery" procedure.

Authentication Recovery	
Please select one authenticator to perform recovery.	
Androidv10	
Unable to login/Do not have any Authenticator App(s)	Previous
NOTE	
For the detailed steps in performing Authentication R Appendix A: Troubleshooting Login of the Backup	

#### 3. Unable to perform the "Authentication Recovery" procedure

Guide for Android and iOS.

If you are not able to perform the "Authentication Recovery" procedure, click the **Unable to login/Do not have any Authenticator App(s)** link, then the following message will be displayed "Please contact your backup server administrator for assistance" in gaining access to your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account.

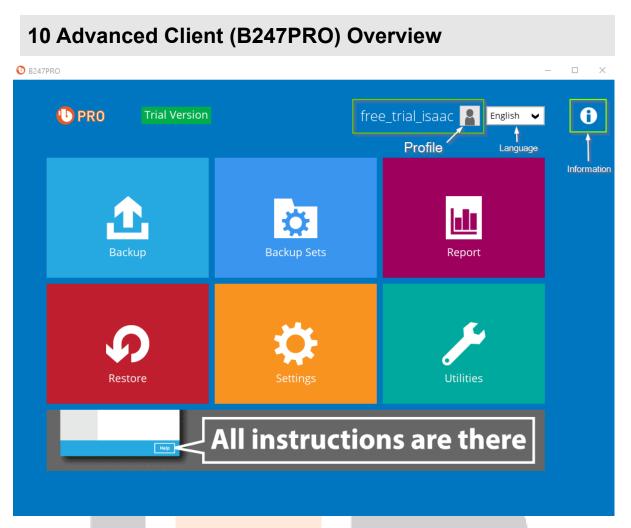
2.



Authentication Recovery Please select one authenticator to perform recovery.	
Please contact your backup server administrator for assistance.	ОК
Unable to login/Do not have any Authenticator App(s)	Previous







Advanced Client (B247PRO) main interface has nine (9) icons that can be accessed by the user:

- Profile
- Language
- Information
- Backup
- Backup Sets
- Report
- Restore
- Settings
- O <u>Utilities</u>



# 10.1 Profile

The **Profile** icon shows the settings that can be modified by the user. The features that will be shown will depend on if the user accounts were using Twilio Two-Factor Authentication in prior to upgrading to v8.5.0.0 or above and continues to use Twilio.



There are seven (7) available features:

- General
- Contacts
- ➢ <u>Time Zone</u>
- Encryption Recovery
- Password (Only shown for backup accounts created prior to Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8.5.0.0 and using Twilio for Two-Factor Authentication.)

24/7

- Authentication
- Security Settings (Only shown for backup accounts created prior to Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8.5.0.0 and using Twilio for Two-Factor Authentication.)

### 10.1.1 General

The General tab displays the user's information.

🕐 B247PRO			-		$\times$
Profile	User Infor	mation			
	Login name	free_trial_isaac			
General	Display name	free_trial_isaac			
Contacts					
Time Zone					
Encryption Recovery					
Authentication					
		Save	e Cancel	Не	lp



Control	Description	
Login name	Name of the backup account.	
Display name	Display name of the backup account upon logging in to the B247CBS User Web Console.	

This will be the General tab for old backup accounts that are still using Twilio for Two-Factor Authentication.

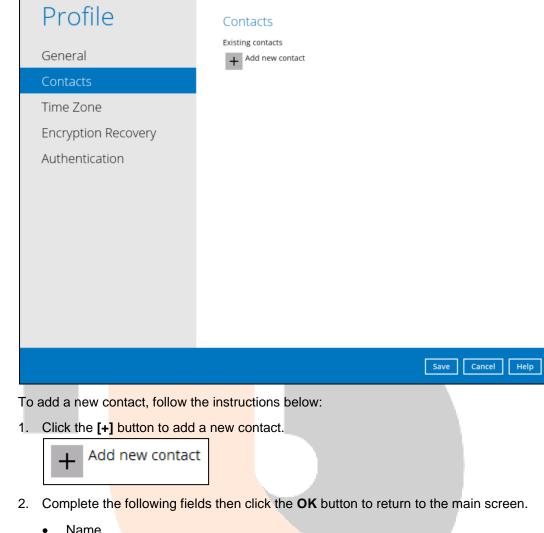
Profile	User Infor	mation	
General	Login name Display name	WindowsTestAccount	
Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery Password Security Settings	Last Succe Time: 10/09/202 IP address: 180. Phone number (	.31	
		Save	Cancel Help

Control	Description				
Login name	Name of the backup account.				
Display name	Display name of the backup account upon logging in to the B247CBS User Web Console.				
Time	The date and time the user last logged in.				
IP address	The IP address used to log in.				
Phone number (MFA)	The phone number where SMS authentication will be sent when 2FA is enabled.				
Browser / App	The browser or app used to log in in to B247CBS User Web Console or Advanced Client (B247PRO).				



# 10.1.2 Contacts

This refers to the contact information of the user. You can also add multiple contacts or modify existing contact information. Having this filled in will help us in sending backup and daily reports and even recovered backup set encryption key in case it was forgotten or lost.



- Name
- Email
- Address
- Company
- Website
- Phone 1
- Phone 2



Profile	-
New Contact	^
Name	_
Email	
Send me encrypted email (S/MIME)	
Address	
Company	
Website	┐
	OK Cancel

3. Click the **Save** button to store the contact information.

Profile	Contacts
General	Existing contacts samplename sample_email@mail.com
Contacts	Add
Time Zone	
Encryption Recovery	
Authentication	
	Save Cancel Help



## 10.1.3 Time Zone

The time zone indicated.

0 B247PRO	- □ >
Profile	Time Zone
General Contacts	GMT+10:00 (EST)
Time Zone	
Encryption Recovery Authentication	
	Save Cancel Help

To modify the time zone, follow the instructions below:

1. Select from the dropdown list.

Time Zone			
GMT+10:00 (EST)	~		
GMT+10:00 (EST)			
GMT+10:00 (PGT)	GMT+10:00 (	EST)	
GMT+10:00 (TRUT)			
GMT+10:00 (YAKT)			
GMT+11:00 (KOST)			
GMT+11:00 (NCT)			
GMT+11:00 (PONT)	1		
GMT+11:00 (SBT)			

2. Click the **Save** button to save the updated time zone.

### **10.1.4 Encryption Recovery**

Backup set encryption key can be recovered by turning this feature on.

**NOTE:** This option may vary depending on your subscription and how we configured varies user profiles and policies. Please contact us for more details.



Profile General Contacts	Encryption Recovery With this option enabled, you can recover your backup set encryption keys by sending a request to us. On
Time Zone	
Encryption Recovery	
Authentication	
	Save Cancel Help

### 10.1.5 Password

The Password tab is for backward compatibility with Advanced Client (B247PRO) with Twilio Two-Factor Authentication. It will only be visible if Twilio Two-Factor Authentication was enabled on the user account on pre-v8.5.0.0 Advanced Client (B247PRO) versions.

Login password can be modified anytime. Tick the **Save Password** box to bypass the password entry upon opening the Advanced Client (B247PRO).

Profile	Password
General Contacts Time Zone	Change Password
Encryption Recovery	
Password	
Security Settings	
	Save Cancel Help



#### NOTE

The **Save password** option may vary in the context of vulnerability that it introduces. We may choose to disable this option. Please contact our support team if you have any concerns.

### **10.1.6 Authentication**

You can use the Authentication function to:

- Change the "<u>Password</u>".
- Enable or disable the "<u>Two-Factor Authentication</u>".
- > Add one or more device(s) registered for Two-Factor Authentication (2FA).
- <u>Remove one or more device(s)</u> registered for Two-Factor Authentication (2FA).
- <u>Re-pair mobile device with Advanced Client (B247PRO) account.</u>
- View details of the "Last Successful Login".

#### NOTE

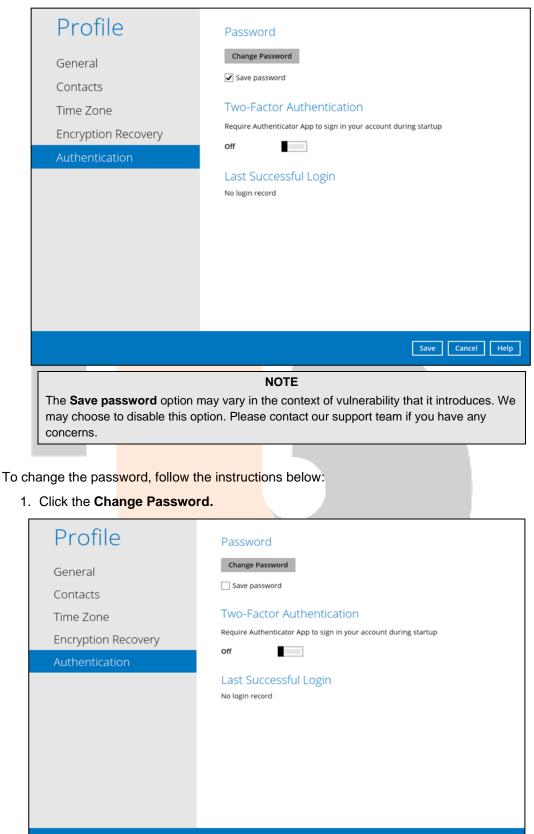
For Two-Factor Authentication (2FA), you can register your mobile device on both Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app and a third-party authenticator apps (e.g., Authy, Duo, Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, LastPass Authenticator, iOS 15 Built-in Two-Factor Authenticator, etc.).

Profile	Password
General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery	Change Password Save password Two-Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Authentication	Off
	Last Successful Login No login record
	Save Cancel Help



### Password

Login password can be modified anytime. Tick the **Save Password** box to bypass the password entry upon opening the Advanced Client (B247PRO).



99



2. Enter the current password.

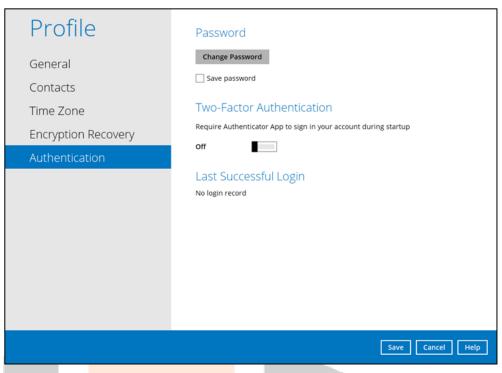
Change Password					
Please confirm current password					
•••••					
				Next	Cancel
	and recenter it f		otion numo	ana Oliak	
Enter the new password a	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click (	OK to re
Enter the new password a o main screen.	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpos	ses. Click (	OK to re
o main scree <mark>n.</mark>	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main scree <mark>n.</mark>	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click (	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password eenter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re
o main screen. Change Password New Password enter password	and re-enter it f	or authentic	ation purpo	ses. Click	OK to re







4. Click Save to store the settings.



### Two-Factor Authentication

To enable the Two-Factor Authentication feature, follow the instructions below:

**NOTE** Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app or a third-party authenticator app is needed for 2FA.

1. Go to **Profile > Authentication > Two-Factor Authentication**.

Profile	Password
General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery	Change Password Save password Two-Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Authentication	off
	Last Successful Login No login record
	Save Cancel Help

2. Swipe lever to the right to turn it on.

For the detailed step-by-step procedure on how to add a mobile device, please refer to **Chapter 6.3.1** of the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) User Guide for Android and iOS.



Profile General Contacts	Password Change Password ✓ Save password
Time Zone	Two-Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Encryption Recovery	
Authentication	Registered Mobile Device(s)
	Add Last Successful Login No login record
	Save Cancel Help

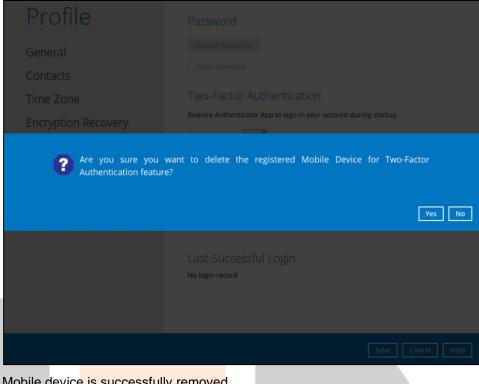
To remove a mobile device, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the **button on the right side of** the registered mobile device. In this example, we are going to delete the mobile device named "Androidv10".

Profile	Password
General Contacts	Change Password Save password Two-Factor Authentication
Time Zone Encryption Recovery	Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup On
Authentication	Registered Mobile Device(s) Androidv10 Re-pair with authenticator 123 B247 Mobile User Add Last Successful Login No login record
	Save Cancel Help



2. A confirmation message will appear, click Yes to proceed. Otherwise, click No.



103

3. Mobile device is successfully removed.

Profile	Password
General Contacts	Change Password
Time Zone Encryption Recovery	Two-Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Authentication	On Registered Mobile Device(s)
	1234 B247 Mobile User mit
	Last Successful Login No login record
	Save Cancel Help



To disable the Two-Factor Authentication feature, follow the instructions below:

**NOTE** Sliding the switch to right hand side will only turn off the Two-Factor Authentication but it will not automatically delete the registered mobile device(s) for Two-Factor Authentication. If you need to delete the registered mobile device(s), this must be done manually first before disabling Two-Factor Authentication.

1. Swipe the lever to the left to turn it off.

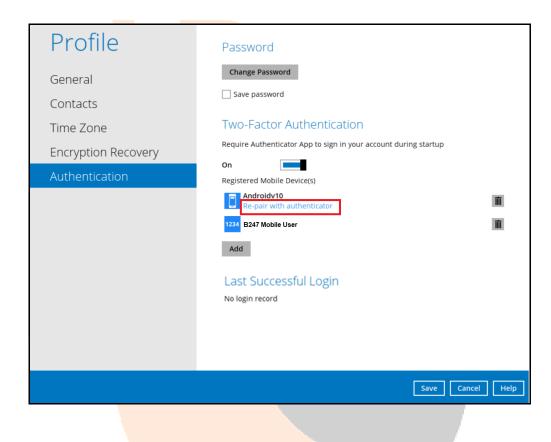
	Profile General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery Authentication	Password     Image Password <th><b>m</b></th>	<b>m</b>
0		Save Cance	Help
2.	Click Save to save the sett Profile General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery Authentication	ings. Password Change Password Save password Chor Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup of Last Successful Login Login record	І Неір



#### **Re-pair with authenticator**

Advanced Client (B247PRO) supports "Re-pair with authenticator" feature that enables user to re-pair Advanced Client (B247PRO) account with Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) Authenticator as long as the mobile device used for the 2FA is still registered in Advanced Client (B247PRO). This feature is used when:

- 1. The registered profile for the 2FA is removed from the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app
- 2. The Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app is accidentally uninstalled from the mobile device



#### Last Successful Login

Displays the Date, Time, IP address, and Browser / App the user last logged in and the registered Mobile Device.

- Time the date and time the user last logged in.
- IP address the IP address used to log in.
- Browser / App the browser or app used to log in to B247CBS User Web Console or Advanced Client (B247PRO).
- Mobile Device the name of the device used for authentication when 2FA is enabled.



Profile	Password
General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery	Change Password Save password Two-Factor Authentication Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Authentication	On Registered Mobile Device(s) Redmi Re-pair with authenticator Add
	Last Successful Login Time: 07/12/2020 17:23 (SGT) IP address: 175.176.33.236 Browser / App: OBM Mobile Device: Redmi
	Save Cancel Help

Below is the screenshot if there is no login record yet.

Profile	Password
General	Change Password
Contacts	✓ Save password
Time Zone	Two-Factor Authentication
Encryption Recovery	Require Authenticator App to sign in your account during startup
Authentication	On Registered Mobile Device(s)
	1234 B247Mobile User
	Redmi Re-pair with authenticator
	Add
	Last Successful Login
	No login record
	Save Cancel Help
	Save Cancer Help



## **10.1.7 Security Settings**

The Security Settings option is for backward compatibility with Twilio Two-Factor Authentication. It will only be visible if Twilio Two-Factor Authentication was enabled on the user account on pre-v8.5.0.0 Advanced Client (B247PRO) versions.

Phone numbers that will be used for sending SMS authentication will be listed here and will show the status if it is verified or not. You can also add phone numbers here that can be used for sending the SMS authentication.

Profile	Security Settings
General	Phone numbers for SMS authentication Australia (+61) -  Verified X
Contacts	Add
Time Zone	
Encryption Recovery	
Password	
Security Settings	
	Save Cancel Help

1. Click the Add button.

Add

107

2. Select the country and enter the phone number, click Add.

	r for SMS authentication		
Andorra (+376)	✔ 1234567890		

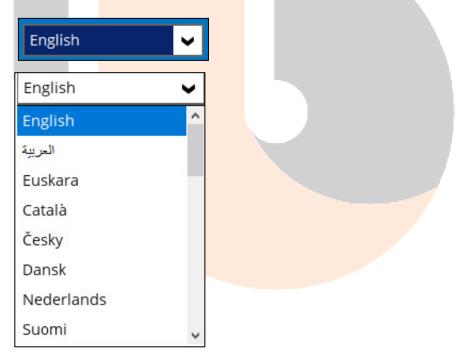


3. Click the **Save** button to save the phone number.

Profile	Security Settings
General Contacts Time Zone Encryption Recovery Password	Phone numbers for SMS authentication Philippines (+63) - Philippines (+63) - Add
Security Settings	
	Save Cancel Help

## 10.2 Language

The list of available languages depends on the backup service provider. Once the language is set, it will reflect on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) interface right away.



# 10.3 Information

The **Information** icon displays the product version and system information of the machine where the Advanced Client (B247PRO) is installed.



0	
	<b>O</b> PRO
Version	9.1.0.0
Virtual Machine Vendor	OpenJDK 64-Bit Server VM Version 25.181-b13 Oracle Corporation
Live Threads Daemon Threads Total Threads Started	13 (Current) / 19 (Peak) 9 36
Heap Size	69,257 kbytes (Current) / 1,864,192 kbytes (Maximum)
Operating System Architecture Number of Processors Committed Virtual Memory Physical Memory Swap Space	Windows 11 Version 10.0 amd64 8 369.704 kbytes 7,829,812 kbytes (Free) / 16,614,756 kbytes (Total) 7,134,084 kbytes (Free) / 21,022,680 kbytes (Total)
VM Arguments	-Djava.library.path=.;.\X64 -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true -Xrs -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m
Class Path Library Path Boot Class Path	.;cb.jar .;.\X64 C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\resources.jar;C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\rt.jar;C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\sunrsasign.jar;C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\jsse.jar;C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\jce.jar;C:\Program Files\B247PRO\jvm\lib\jce.jar;C:\Program

# 10.4 Backup

This feature is used to run the backup set(s).

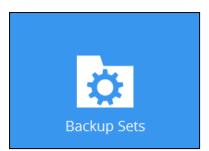


For instructions on how to start a backup, refer to Chapter 13 Run Backup Jobs.

# 10.5 Backup Sets

A backup set is a place for files and/or folders of your backed up data. This feature allows the user to select files individually or an entire folder to backup. It is also used to delete backup set(s).





To create or modify a backup set, follow the instructions on <u>Chapter 11 Create a Backup</u> <u>Set</u>.

### Backup Set Settings

Below is the list of the configurable settings under a Backup Set:

24/7

- General
- Source
- Backup Schedule
- <u>Continuous Backup</u>
- Destination
- (Advanced settings)
- Deduplication
- <u>Retention Policy</u>
- <u>Command Line Tool</u>
- <u>Reminder</u>
- Bandwidth Control
- Others



#### General

This feature allows the user to modify the backup set name and manage the Windows User Authentication login credentials in the backup set.

BackupSet-1	General	
General	Name BackupSet-1	
Source	Owner w8-pro	
Backup Schedule Continuous Backup	Windows User Authentication Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name	
Destination	example.com	
Show advanced settings	User name Username Password	
Delete this backup set	Save	ncel Help

## Backup Set Name

To modify the name of a backup set, follow the steps below:

1. In the **Name** field, enter a new backup set name.

General			
Name			
Owner			
w8-pro			

2. In this example, we are going to change the backup set name to "Data Backup". Click the **Save** button to store the new backup set name.

General	
Name	
Data Backup	
Owner	
w8-pro	



3. The backup set name is successfully updated.

Data Backup	General
	Name
General	Data Backup
Source	Owner
	w8-pro
Backup Schedule	Windows User Authentication
Continuous Backup	Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name
Destination	example.com
Show advanced settings	User name
	username
	Password
	•••••
ete this backup set	Save Cancel He
	NOTE
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	ame, make sure that it does not have an identical name.
assigning a backup set n	
assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
assigning a backup set n	
assigning a backup set n	
assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	
n assigning a backup set n	



### Windows User Authentication

To successfully perform backup and restore operations, Advanced Client (B247PRO) requires both read and write permission to all the files/folders selected in the backup source.

The Windows User Authentication login credentials are used by the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to ensure it has sufficient permission to access files and/or folders selected in the Backup Source, the temporary folder location, and the backup destination if it is a network drive accessible from backup machine via LAN, especially when running scheduled backup jobs, as the default Windows account used by the Advanced Client (B247PRO) scheduler service is a local system account which does not have access to network resources.

Windows User Authentication	
Domain Name (e.g Ahsay.com) / Host Name	
example.com	
User name	
username	
Password	
•••••	

Windo	ws User Au	thenticatior	n
Domain I	lame (e.g Ahsay.co	om) / Host Name	
example	.com		
User nan	e		
usernar	ne@outlook.com		
Password			
•••••			

• If files and/or folders selected are located on network drive(s), the login credentials for the Windows User Authentication must have permission to access network resources, (e.g., an administrator account).

o r

- If the machine is a file server shared by multiple users, then the Advanced Client (B247PRO) will require login credentials with read/write permissions to access all the selected files and/or folders in the backup source (e.g., an administrator account).
- For Advanced Client (B247PRO) installed on MS Windows version 8, 8.1, 10, and 11 using the Microsoft account for Windows User Authentication is supported, e.g., <u>username@outlook.com</u>.

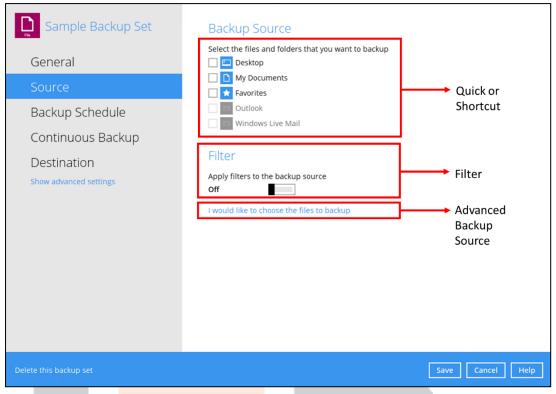
Some users prefer to use a pin to log in to Windows, this cannot be used for the Windows User Authentication. The pin can only be used for logging in to Windows and is not applicable for the Windows User Authentication. The password of the account must be provided instead of the pin to access files and/or folders in the backup source.

Field	Description
Domain Name	The domain or host name of the machine.
Username	Login username used by the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to access files and/or folders selected in the backup source.
Password	Login password used by the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to access files and/or folders selected in the backup source.



#### Source

This feature allows the user to select files and/or folders in the backup source to back up.



114

#### There are three (3) ways to select files and/or folders to back up:

Option	Description
Quick or Shortcut	This allows the user to back up files and/or folders in the selected backup source entirely.
Filter	This allows the user to select or exclude files and/or folders from the backup job.
Advanced Backup Source	This allows the user to select files and/or folders individually to back up.



## **Option 1: Quick or Shortcut**

This option allows the user to quickly select a backup source to be backed up.

Backup Source
Select the files and folders that you want to backup
Desktop
My Documents
🔲 ★ Favorites
Outlook
Windows Live Mail

If any of the following backup source is selected and the <u>Backup Schedule</u> is enabled, the Windows User Authentication will prompt the user to enter the login password. To select a backup source without entering the login password, the backup schedule must be disabled.

			<b>4</b> / /		
Desktop					
My Documents					
Favorites					
Outlook		0			
Windows Live N	1ail				
			-		
Windows Us	er Autł	nenticat	ion		
Domain Name (e.g	Ahsay.com	) / Host Nam	ie		
example.com					
User name					
username					
Password					

**A A** 

#### NOTE

During the backup set creation, if this type of backup source (Quick or Shortcut) is selected and the Schedule is set to "on", then the Windows User Authentication screen will be displayed. You will need to enter the login password, otherwise, the creation of backup set will not continue.



To know the locations of the folder(s) that will be backed up for each selected backup source, refer to the following table:

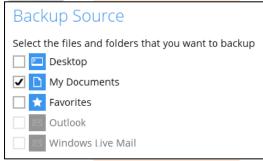
Backup Sou	rce	Description			
Desktop		If Desktop is selected, all files and/or folders in the following location will be backed up: <b>%UserProfile%\Desktop</b>			
My Documents	2	If Documents is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up: %UserProfile%\Documents If the Follow Link is enabled, all files and/or folders located in the following locations will also be backed up: %UserProfile%\Music %UserProfile%\Pictures %UserProfile%\Videos NOTE: The Follow link is enabled by default.			
Favorites		If Favorites is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up: <b>%UserProfile%\Favorites</b>			
Outlook	0	If Outlook is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up: %UserProfile%\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Outlook			
Windows Live Mail		If Windows Live Mail is selected, all files and/or folders located in the following location will be backed up: %UserProfile%\AppData\Local\Microsoft\Windows Live Mail			





To select files and/or folder to back up using the Quick or Shortcut option, follow the steps below:

1. Select a backup source.



**NOTE:** The Outlook and Windows Live Mail will be disabled if they were not installed on the machine.

Backup Source				
Select the files and folders	that you want to backup			
My Documents				
🔲 ★ Favorites				
🗌 🖾 Outlook				
🗌 🖂 Windows Live Mail				

2. Click the Save button to store the selected backup source.

## **Option 2: Filter**

The Filter Backup Source is an alternative way to select a backup source which does not require Windows User Authentication login password even if the backup schedule is enabled unless the filter backup source is located on a network drive.



Filter
Apply filters to the backup source Off

The following options in the filter backup source does not require Windows User Authentication login password:

All hard disk drives	Apply this filter to all files/folders in All hard disk drives
Specific folder	This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Change])     Change     This share requires access credentials

To select files and/or folders to back up using the Filter Backup Source, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the filter setting.

Filter
Apply filters to the backup source
On 📃

2. Click the [+] button to create filter.

Existing filters

+ Add new filter



3. Assign a desired name to the backup filter.

New Backup Filter	
Name	
Filter-1	

### 4. Select from the options below.

For each of the matched files/folders under top directory					
<ul> <li>Include them</li> </ul>					
<ul> <li>Exclude them</li> </ul>					
Exclude all unmatched files/folders					
Match file/folder names by					
<ul> <li>Simple comparison ends with </li> </ul>					
O Regular expression (UNIX-style)					

5. In this example, all files and/or folders that end with the letter 'X' will be included to the backup job. You can add multiple patterns here.

Existing patterns to match	
X	X
Add	

119

6. Select whether you would like to apply the filter to all files and/or folders in all hard disk drives or to a specific folder only. If 'This folder only' is selected, click the **Change** button to select the specific folder or input the local / network address that you would like to apply the filter to.

Apply this filter to all files/folders in				
<ul> <li>All hard disk drives</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Change])</li> </ul>				
\\10.3.0.124\test	Change			
This share requires access credentials				
Apply to				
File Folder				

7. If 'This share requires access credentials' is checked, enter the Username and Password of the local or network drive. This checkbox will only be enabled if a local or network address is detected.



8. Click the **OK** button to save the created filter, then click the **Save** button to save the settings. Once you run a backup, all files and/or folders that match the applied filter will be backed up.

**NOTE:** Multiple backup filters can be created by clicking the **Add** button.

Existing filters	7
Filter-1         C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop         Filter-2         C:\Users\Administrator\Documents	
Add	

NOTE

For more details about backup source file filtering, refer to **Chapter 4.1** of the <u>Backup247 Online</u> <u>Backup Manager v9 Backup Source File Filter Guide.</u>

120



## **Option 3: Advanced Backup Source**

The Advanced Backup Source is another way to select a backup source which does not require Windows User Authentication login password even if the backup schedule is enabled unless the advanced backup source is located on a network drive.

Sample Backup Set	
Sample Rackup Source         Advanced Backup Source         Folders         This PC         Image: Control Disk (C:)         Image: Control Disk (C:)	
Show files	
Add network address	OK Cancel Help
Delete this backup set	Saye Cancel Help

The following table shows the list of options in the Advanced Backup Source which require and does not require Windows User Authentication login password:

Advanced Backup Source		Description		
Local Disk		Does not require Windows User Authentication login password.		
Network drive		Requires Windows User Authentication login password. For network drive/s, you will need to enter the login credentials which has permission to access network resources to back up selected files and/or folders.		
Libraries		Does not require Windows User Authentication login password. NOTE: This type of backup source may not be supported on other versions of Windows. This feature is not supported on: • Windows 11 • Windows 10		
		<ul> <li>Windows 8.1</li> <li>Windows 8</li> <li>Windows Server 2022</li> </ul>		



	<ul><li>Windows Server 2019 and</li><li>Windows Server 2012 R2</li></ul>			
		Supported on: <ul> <li>Windows 7</li> <li>Windows Server 2016 and</li> <li>Windows Server 2008 R2</li> </ul>		
Add network address		Requires Windows User Authentication login password. For network drive/s, you will need to enter the login credentials which has permission to access network resources to back up selected files and/or folders.		

To select files and/or folders using the Advanced Backup Source, follow the steps below:

1. In the Source window, select 'I would like to choose the files to backup'.

I would like to	choose	the	files to	backup
			24	

- 2. There are two (2) ways to select files and/or folders, one is when the files and/or folders are in the local machine and another way is when the files and/or folders are in the network.
  - In the Advanced Backup Source window, select 'Show files' to display the files inside each folder, then select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up.

Folders       Name         Perfugs       Copy of obs-user-guide-oem         Program Files       Copy of ODBC         Program Files       Copy of ODBCINST         Program Files       Copy of OEMBLog         Copy of OEMBLog       Copy of OEMBLog         Program Files       Sologe Chrome         Image: Program Files       Sologe Chrome         Program Files       Sologe Chrome         Program Files       Sologe Chrome         Program Files       Sologe Chrome         Program Files       NOTEPAD         Program Files       Notrepade         Program Files       Sobs-user-guide-old         Program Files       Sobs-user-guide-old         Program Cologe       Sobs-user-guide-oem         Program Cologe       Sobs-user-guide-oem         Prototories       Sobs-user-guide-oem </th <th>Size 2,521 1 KB 5 KB 189 KB 39,477 43,827 5 KB 300 KB 7 KB 97 KB 12 KB 65 KB 1,976 1,075 2,540 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,540 2,541 2,540</th> <th>Date modified 08/15/2005 11:42 12/14/2005 13:35 09/02/2004 16:37 07/04/2005 18:46 06/07/2006 18:51 11/06/2017 11:16 12/01/2017 13:57 06/28/2025 20:39 10/29/1998 16:45 02/18/2020 07:35 07/05/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:28 08/12/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:53 06/17/2005 19:29 03/10/2005 19:29 03/11/2005 17:53 06/17/2005 12:06 03/10/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49 Material Constraints Material Constraints 04/15/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49 11/1 ✓</th> <th></th>	Size 2,521 1 KB 5 KB 189 KB 39,477 43,827 5 KB 300 KB 7 KB 97 KB 12 KB 65 KB 1,976 1,075 2,540 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,541 2,540 2,540 2,541 2,540	Date modified 08/15/2005 11:42 12/14/2005 13:35 09/02/2004 16:37 07/04/2005 18:46 06/07/2006 18:51 11/06/2017 11:16 12/01/2017 13:57 06/28/2025 20:39 10/29/1998 16:45 02/18/2020 07:35 07/05/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:28 08/12/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:53 06/17/2005 19:29 03/10/2005 19:29 03/11/2005 17:53 06/17/2005 12:06 03/10/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49 Material Constraints Material Constraints 04/15/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49 11/1 ✓	
--	--	---	--



 If the files and/or folders are in a network drive, click the 'Add network address' link. Enter the network address.

nput t	e details of network address, and click [OK] to procee
Networ	k address (e.g. \\servername.domain\path)

If access credentials are required to access the network, then check the "This share requires access credentials' checkbox. The checkbox will only be enabled once the network address is entered. Enter the Username and Password of the network drive and click the **OK** button.

•••••
Password
username
User name (e.g. domain\username)
<ul> <li>This share requires access credentials</li> </ul>

By default, all the files inside the folder in the network drive is selected for backup. But there is still an option to deselect files that you do not want to be included in the backup.

- NOTE
   There must be a specific folder that is shared in the network drive that will be entered in the network address e.g., \\125.5.184.23\Share
- Temporary folder location are not supported for individual login credentials but can still be setup separately using existing Windows User Authentication login.

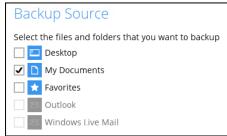
3. Click the **OK** button to save the selection, then click the **Save** button to store settings.

In selecting files and/or folders to back up, the three (3) options can be used simultaneously. For more details, please refer to the example scenarios below:

#### Scenario 1 (Quick or Shortcut + Filter)

You can use the quick or shortcut option and apply filter to the selected backup source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Choose a backup source.





2. Create a filter which will be applied to the backup source.

Existing filters	
+ Add new filter	
D b1 Packup Source	^
New Backup Filter	
Name	
Filter-1	
For each of the matched files/folders under top directory <ul> <li>Include them</li> <li>Exclude them</li> </ul>	
Exclude all unmatched files/folders	
Match file/folder names by	
● Simple comparison ends with ∨	
<ul> <li>Regular expression (UNIX-style)</li> </ul>	
Existing patterns to match	
	X
Add	
Apply this filter to all files/folders in	
<ul> <li>All hard disk drives</li> <li>This folder only (Input local / network address or click [Charding of the second second</li></ul>	ngel)
	OK Cancel Help
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

3. Click the **OK** button to save the created filter, then click the **Save** button to store settings.

#### Scenario 2 (Quick or Shortcut + Advanced Backup Source)

You can use the quick or shortcut option and select files and/or folders in the advanced backup source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Choose a backup source.

Backu	o Source
Select the	files and folders that you want to backup
🗌 🛄 De	sktop
🖌 🗋 My	Documents
🗌 🗙 Fav	vorites
🔤 🖾 Ou	itlook
Wi	ndows Live Mail

2. In the source window, click 'I would like to choose the files to backup' and select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up. Or click 'Add network address' to backup files and/or folders located in a network drive.

I would like to choose the files to backup



Pertogs     Program Files     Program Files     Program Files     Program Files     Program Data     Prograta     Program Data     Prograta     Program Data     Program Da	Name  Copy of obs-user-guide-oem  Copy of ODBC  Copy of ODBCINST  Copy of OEWABLog  Copy of OEWABLog  Copy of rps-admin-guide-50.doc  for frefox  Solutions  Main Solutions  Main Solutions  MozillaUninstall  Moz	Size 2,521 1 KB 5 KB 2 KB 189 KB 189 KB 39,477 43,827 5 KB 300 KB 7 KB 97 KB 12 KB 15 KB 1 KB 1,976 1,075 2,540 2,521 2,521 2,481	Date modified 08/15/2005 11:42 12/14/2005 13:35 09/02/2004 16:37 07/04/2005 18:46 06/07/2006 18:51 11/06/2017 11:16 12/01/2017 13:57 06/28/2005 20:39 10/29/198 16:45 02/18/2002 07:35 07/05/2005 19:29 02/14/2004 17:28 08/12/2004 12:00 07/05/2005 19:29 08/11/2005 17:53 06/17/2005 12:06 03/10/2006 11:35 08/15/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49	
Show files	n 💷 - tems p	er page 50	✓ Page 1/1 ✓	

3. Click the **OK** button to save the selection, then click the **Save** button to save settings.





### Scenario 3 (Filter + Advanced Backup Source)

You can use the filter backup source and select files and/or folders in the advanced backup source at the same time. To use this type of combination, follow the steps below:

1. Create a filter.

Г

Filter	
Apply filters to the backup source On	
Existing filters	
Filter-1 C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop	
Add	

2. In the source window, click 'I would like to choose the files to backup' and select the files and/or folders that you would like to back up. Or click 'Add network address' to backup files and/or folders located in a network drive.

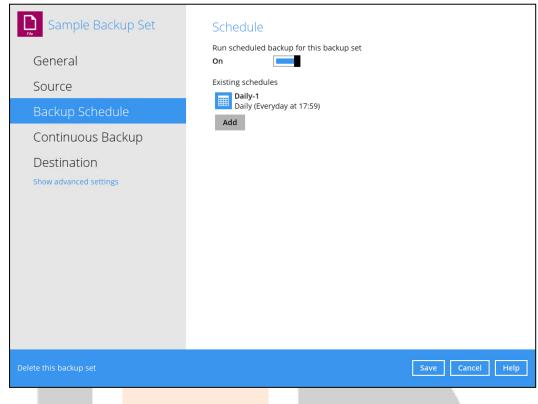
Image: Constraint of the second se		Packup Source	Size 2,521 1 KB 5 KB 2 KB 189 KB 39,477 43,827 5 KB 300 KB 7 KB	Date modified 08/15/2005 11:42 12/14/2005 13:35 09/02/2004 16:37 07/04/2005 18:46 06/07/2006 18:51 11/06/2017 11:16 12/01/2017 13:57 06/28/2005 20:39 10/29/1998 16:45 02/18/2002 07:35	
✓ Show files Items per page 50   Page 1/1	⊕-□ ↓ Public     ⊕-□ ↓ Windows     ⊕-□ ↓ CD Drive (D:)     ⊕-□ ↓ Network     ⊕-□ ↓ CLOUD-BACKUPSRV     ⊕-↓ Sclient     ⊕-□ ↓ Ubraries	↓       MozillaUninstall         ↓       mozver.dat         ♥       NOTEPAD         ♥       nsreg.dat         □       ♂         □       ♂         □       ♂         □       ♂         □       ♂         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ③         □       ③         □       ③         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       ○         □       □         □       □         □       □         □       □         □       □         □       □         □       □         □       □         □ <t< td=""><td>97 KB 12 KB 65 KB 1,976 1,075 2,540 2,521 2,481</td><td>07/05/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:28 08/12/2004 12:00 07/05/2005 19:29 08/11/2005 19:29 08/11/2005 12:06 03/10/2006 11:35 08/15/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49  ✓</td><td></td></t<>	97 KB 12 KB 65 KB 1,976 1,075 2,540 2,521 2,481	07/05/2005 19:29 02/14/2006 17:28 08/12/2004 12:00 07/05/2005 19:29 08/11/2005 19:29 08/11/2005 12:06 03/10/2006 11:35 08/15/2005 11:42 11/01/2005 17:49  ✓	
Add network address OK Cancel Help		ltems pe	r page 50		11-br

3. Click the **OK** button to save the selection, then click the **Save** button to store settings.



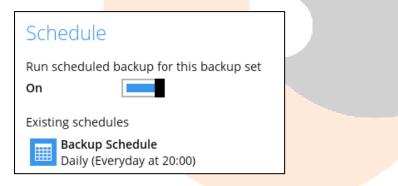
### **Backup Schedule**

This feature allows the user to assign a backup schedule for the backup job to run automatically.

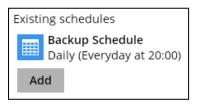


To configure a backup schedule, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the backup schedule setting.



2. Select an existing backup schedule to modify or click the **Add** button to create a new one.





3. In the New Backup Schedule window, configure the following backup schedule settings.

Daily         Daily         Start backup         at       14         Stop         until full backup completed         Run Retention Policy after backup	Type Daily Start backup at It Stop until full backup completed	Type Daily Start backup at It Stop until full backup completed	Name	
Daily       Image: Constraint of the second se	Daily  Start backup     It   It     It   It     It   It   Stop     Intil full backup completed	Daily  Start backup          at       14       : 10         Stop       until full backup completed	Daily-1	
Start backup at  14 14 10 Stop until full backup completed	Start backup at  14 14 10 Stop until full backup completed	Start backup at  14 14 10 Stop until full backup completed		
at   14   10     Stop   until full backup completed	at   14   10     Stop   until full backup completed	at   14   10     Stop   until full backup completed		
until full backup completed 🖌	until full backup completed 🖌	until full backup completed 🖌		
			Stop	
Run Retention Policy after backup	Run Retention Policy after backup	Run Retention Policy after backup	until full backup completed $~ \checkmark$	
			Run Retention Policy after backup	

- Name the name of the backup schedule.
- Type the type of backup schedule. There are four (4) types of backup schedule: Daily, Weekly, Monthly and Custom.
  - **Daily** the time of the day or interval in minutes/hours when the backup job will run.

Name	
Daily-1	
Туре	
Daily 🖌	
Start backup	
at 🗸 15 🗸 : 41 🗸	
Stop	
until full backup completed 🖌	

• Weekly – the day of the week and the time of the day or interval in minutes/hours when the backup job will run.

New Backup Schedule
Name
Weekly-1
Туре
Weekly 🖌
Backup on these days of the week Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri 🗸 Sat
Start backup
at 🗸 23 🖌 : 00 🗸
Stop
until full backup completed 🖌
Run Retention Policy after backup



• **Monthly** – the day of the month and the time of that day which the backup job will run.

New Backup Schedule
Name
Monthly-1
Туре
Monthly 🖌
Backup on the following day every month
● Day Last ♥
🔿 First 🖌 Sunday 🖌
Start backup at
23 V: 59 V on the selected days
Stop
until full backup completed 🖌
Run Retention Policy after backup

• **Custom** – a specific date and the time of that date when the backup job will run.

Name	
Custom-1	
Туре	
Custom V	
Backup on the following day once	
2019 December 🖌 31 🖌	
Start backup at	
23 🖌 : 59 🖌	
Stop	
until full backup completed 🖌	

- Start backup the start time of the backup job.
  - at this option will start a backup job <u>at a specific time</u>.
  - every this option will start a backup job in intervals of minutes or hours.

				. 1	r			
Start backup	)				Start backup	)		_
every 🖌	1 minute	~			every 🖌	1 minute	~	
Stop	1 minute	^			Stop	30 minutes	^	
until full ba	2 minutes		<b>v</b>		until full ba	1 hour		¥
	3 minutes					2 hours		
Run Rete	4 minutes		backup		Run Rete	3 hours		backup
	5 minutes					4 hours	1	
	6 minutes					6 hours		
	10 minutes					8 hours		
	12 minutes	~				12 hours	¥	



Here is an example of a backup set that has a periodic and normal backup schedule.

New Backup Schedule	New Backup Schedule
Name Weekly-1	Name Weekly-2
Type Weekly 🖌	Type Weekly 🖌
Backup on these days of the week Sun 🖌 Mon 🖌 Tue 🖌 Wed 🖌 Thu 🖌 Fri 🗌 Sat	Backup on these days of the week           Sun         Mon         Tue         Wed         Thu         Fri         Image: Sate
Start backup	Start backup at V 21 V : 00 V
Stop until full backup completed 🖌	Stop until full backup completed 🖌
Run Retention Policy after backup	Run Retention Policy after backup
Figure 1.1	Figure 1.2

**Figure 1.1** – Periodic backup schedule runs every 4 hours from Monday – Friday during business hours

**Figure 1.2** – Normal backup schedule runs at 21:00 or 9:00 PM on Saturday and Sunday on weekend non-business hours

- Stop the stop time of the backup job. This only applies to schedules with start backup "at" and is not supported for periodic backup schedule (start backup "every")
  - until full backup completed this option will stop a backup job once it is complete. This is the configured stop time of the backup job by default.
  - after (defined no. of hrs.) this option will stop a backup job after a certain number of hours regardless of whether the backup job has completed or not. This can range from 1 to 24 hrs.

The number of hours must be enough to complete a backup of all files in the backup set. For small files in a backup, if the number of hours is not enough to back up all files, then the outstanding files will be backed up in the next backup job. However, if the backup set contains large files, this may result in partially backed up files.

For example, if a backup has 100GB file size which will take approximately 15 hours to complete on your environment, but you set the "stop" after 10 hours, the file will be partially backed up and cannot be restored. The next backup will upload the files from scratch again.

The partially backed up data will have to be removed by running the <u>Data</u> <u>Integrity Check</u>.

As a general rule, it is recommended to review this setting regularly as the data size on the backup machine may grow over time.

- Run Retention Policy after backup if enabled, the Advanced Client (B247PRO) will run a Retention Policy job to remove files from the backup destination(s) which have exceeded the Retention Policy after performing a backup job.
- 4. Click the **OK** button to save the configured backup schedule settings.
- 5. Click the **Save** button to save settings.

130



**NOTE:** Multiple backup schedules can be created.

Schedule
Run scheduled backup for this backup set On
Existing schedules
Daily-1 Daily (Everyday at 18:00)
Weekly-1 Weekly - Saturday (Every week at 23:00)
Monthly-1 Monthly - The Last Day (Every month at 23:59)
Custom-1 Custom (12/31/2019 at 23:59)
Add
24/7

### **Continuous Backup**

131

This feature provides backup for selective data whenever a change is made. This feature is disabled by default.

Data Backup	Continuous Backup
General Source Backup Schedule	Backup whenever a change is made Off
Continuous Backup Destination Show advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

To enable the continuous backup, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the continuous backup setting.





2. It is recommended to select this option to avoid backing up files that are marked as system files.

	•
	Backup set type File
I	Do not backup files defined as system files

3. Click the drop-down button to define how often the continuous backup job will run. The backup time interval can be set from 1 minute to 12 hours.



4. This option app<mark>lies</mark> the continuous backup on small regular update files. The file size can range from 25MB to unlimited MB.

Only apply to files	smaller than	
Unlimited	✓ MB	24/7
25		
50		
100		
500	5	
1000	e filter	
Unlimited		

132

NOTE

For large file size, the continuous backup may not run with a short time interval. You may need to adjust the continuous backup time interval (in step 3).

5. This allows the user to create an exclude filter to exclude files and/or folders from the backup job. Click the [+] button to create an exclude filter.



6. If an exclude filter is created, click the **OK** button to save the created exclude filter, then click the **Save** button to save the configured continuous backup settings.

NOTE

Only File backup sets on Windows operating system will support Continuous Backup Schedule on v8.3.4.0 (or above).

All v7 and pre-v8.3.4.0 Windows non-File backup sets with Continuous Backup Schedules will be automatically converted to periodic backup schedules after upgrading to v8.3.4.0 (or above)



### Destination

This feature allows user to select a backup mode and add an additional storage destination.

0 B247PRO		-		×
	Destination			
	Backup mode Sequential  Existing storage destinations Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Cocal-1 Coca	urity ro	eason)	
	Add Option to keep a local copy for quick data restoration			
	Previous Next Can	:el	Hel	p

There are two (2) types of backup mode:

Backup mode	Description
Sequential	This is the configured backup mode by default. This backup mode will run a backup job to each backup destination one by one.
Concurrent	This backup mode will run a backup job to all backup destinations simultaneously.

Comparison between Sequential and Concurrent Backup mode

Backup mode	Pros Cons	
Sequential	Takes less resources in the local machine (e.g., memory, CPU, bandwidth, etc.) to complete a backup job.	Backup job is slower than in concurrent mode since the backup job will upload the backup data to the selected backup destinations one at a time.
Concurrent	<ul> <li>Backup job is faster than in Sequential mode.</li> <li>Maximum number of concurrent backup destinations can be configured.</li> </ul>	Requires more resources in the local machine (e.g., memory, CPU, bandwidth, etc.) to complete a backup job.

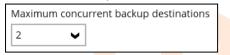
To modify the backup mode, follow the steps below:



- 1. Go to Backup Sets, then choose a backup set.
- 2. Select the **Destination** tab in the backup set settings.
- 3. Click the drop-down button to select a backup mode.



4. If "Concurrent" is selected, click the drop-down button to select the no. of maximum concurrent backup destination.



5. Click the **Save** button to save the selected backup mode.

To add a new storage destination, follow the steps below:

1. Click the Add button.

134

	Destination
Backup mode	
Existing storage destinatio	ins
+ Add new storage de	stination / destination pool

Click the drop-down button to select a backup destination. For security reason, we don't publish B247CBS IP address that uses port 443 (SSL) to exchange data. Destination storage is pre-allocated and driven by plans chosen by our end users. During signup, there are options to choose Melbourne DC, Sydney DC, or our private Hot Cloud Storage.

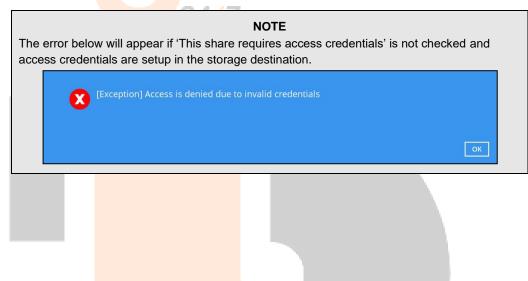
New Storage Destination / Destination	ool
Name	
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	
Destination storage	
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	~
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	
Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive	



 If the Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive is selected, click the Change button to select a new storage destination or input the local or network address. Check 'This share requires access credentials' if required then click the Test button to validate access to it.

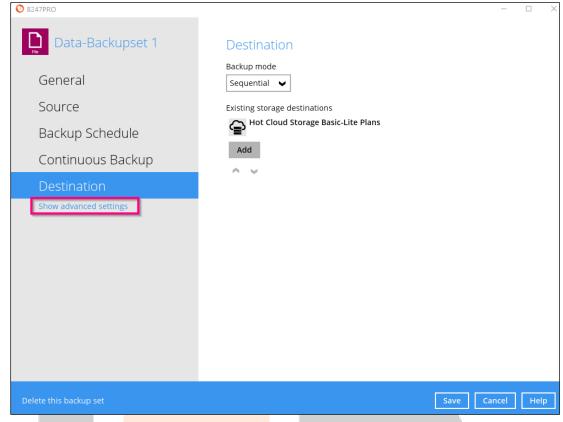
ange

4. If there is an added storage destination, click the **OK** button to save the added one. Click the **Save** button to save the updated backup mode and the added storage destination.





To continue with the menu, click the **Show advanced settings** link to modify the **Deduplication**, **Retention Policy**, **Command Line Tool**, **Reminder**, **Bandwidth Control**, and other configurable items under the **others** tab.



### **Deduplication**

Starting with Advanced Client (B247PRO) v9.0.0.0 or above, the In-File Delta feature (i.e., Incremental, Differential and Full) will be replaced with Deduplication. This feature is **On** (enabled) by default.

When this feature is **On (enabled)** for the backup set, a checksum verification of each backup file which was split into several blocks of varying size will be performed to compare its content and identify which block is duplicated, thus will perform deduplication of data.

When this feature is **Off (disabled)** for the backup set, a checksum verification of each backup file will not be performed, thus the duplicated data will NOT be removed or deduplicated during a backup job.



Sample Backup Set	Deduplication
General	Enable Deduplication On
Source	Deduplication scope Same file path within the same backup set
Backup Schedule	All files within the same backup set
Continuous Backup	Block size
Destination	Auto V Bytes
Deduplication	Migrate existing data to latest version
Retention Policy	
Command Line Tool	
Reminder	
Bandwidth Control	
Others	
Hide advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

There are two (2) types of Deduplication scope:

Deduplication scope	Description	
Same file path within the same backup set	Deduplication will be applied to the duplicated contents within a file during the current backup job	
All files within the same backup set	Deduplication will be applied across different files in the backup set.	

When the Deduplication feature is enabled for the backup set, a **Migrate Data** option will be available in the advanced backup options which can be configured before starting a backup job.

Below is an example of a backup set with Deduplication setting enabled.



Choose Your I	Backup Options	
Sample Backup Set		
Backup set type File Destinations Cocal-1 (C:\backup) Migrate Data Migrate existing data to latest version Retention Policy Run Retention Policy after backup Hide advanced option		
	Previous Backup	Cancel Help

### Migrate Data

When this option is <mark>enabled, the existing dat</mark>a will be migrated to the latest version during a backup job. This op<mark>tion is disabled by defaul</mark>t.

Migrate Data

Migrate existing data to latest version

NOTE

In case the Deduplication setting is **Off (disabled)** for the backup set, the Migrate Data option will not be displayed.



Below is an example of a backup set with Deduplication setting Off (disabled).

	Choose Your Backup Options
	Sample Backup Set
	Backup set type File Destinations Cocal-1 (C:\backup) Retention Policy Run Retention Policy after backup Hide advanced option
	Previous Backup Cancel Help
1. Sele En Or De	eduplication scope
ded	k the drop-down button to select the block size that will be used for the uplicated data. This option is configured to use "Auto" by default.
Au 25 51	uto to 6 k - 1 M (save more space but slower) 2 k - 2 M (optimal settings) M - 4 M (save less space but faster)
	the checkbox if you want the existing data to be migrated to the latest version

Migrate existing data to latest version

during a backup job.

139

4. Click the **Save** button to store the modified Deduplication settings.



### **Retention Policy**

When the Advanced Client (B247PRO) identifies files and/or folders that are deleted, updated, or with updated permission/attributes during a backup job, these files and/or folders will then be moved from the data area to the Retention Area.

**Retention Area** is a place used as a temporary destination to store these files (deleted, updated, or with updated permission/attributes during a backup job). Files and/or folders in the Retention Area can still be restored.

The **Retention Policy** is used to control how long these files remain in the Retention Area before they are removed which can be specified in the number of days, weeks, months, or backup jobs. Retained data within all backup destinations (e.g., B247CBS, local drive, SFTP/FTP and cloud storage) are cleared by the Retention Policy job.

The default Retention Policy setting for a File Backup Set is 7 days, but the appropriate Retention Policy setting depends on individual, contractual, or regulatory requirements.

Data Backup	Retention Policy
General Source Backup Schedule Continuous Backup Destination	How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source <ul> <li>Simple</li> <li>Advanced</li> </ul> Keep the deleted files for 7 Day(s)
Deduplication	
Retention Policy	
Command Line Tool	
Reminder	
Bandwidth Control	
Others Hide advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help



### There are two (2) types of Retention Policy:

Туре	Description	
Simple	A simple Retention Policy is a basic policy where the retained files (in the Retention Area) are removed automatically after the user specifies the number of days or backup jobs.	
Advanced	An advanced Retention Policy defines a more advanced and flexible policy where the retained files (in the Retention Area) are removed automatically after a combination of user defined policy.	

### Comparison between Simple and Advanced Retention Policy

Control	Simple		Advanced
Backup Jobs	Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 backup job(s)		Not applicable
Days	Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 day(s)		Can keep the deleted files within 1 to 365 day(s)
Туре	Not applicable		<ul> <li>Daily</li> <li>Weekly</li> <li>Monthly</li> <li>Quarterly</li> <li>Yearly</li> <li>Custom</li> </ul>
User-defined name	Not applicable		Applicable

### WARNING

When files and/or folders in the Retention Area exceed the Retention Policy setting, they are permanently removed from the backup set and cannot be restored

To configure a **Simple Retention Policy**, follow the steps below:

- 1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
- 2. Click the Retention Policy tab in the Backup Set Settings.
- 3. Select **Simple** from the options, then click the drop-down button to define the number of day(s) or job(s) which the deleted files will be retained. This is configured as seven (7) days by default.

Retention Policy
How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source $\odot$ Simple
Advanced
Keep the deleted files for
7 V Day(s) V



4. Click the **Save** button to save the configured Retention Policy settings.

To configure an Advanced Retention Policy, follow the steps below:

- 1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
- 2. Click the Retention Policy tab in the Backup Set Settings.
- 3. Select **Advanced** from the options, then click the **[+]** button to create.

Retention Policy
How to retain the files in the backup set, which have been deleted in the backup source Simple Advanced
Existing advanced retention policies  Add new advanced retention policy

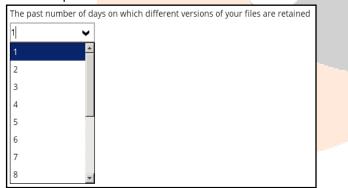
4. Assign the desired name to the Retention Policy.

Nev	w Retention Policy
Nam	e
Dail	y-1

5. Click the drop-down button to display the Retention Type, then select one.

	. ~
Туре	
Daily 🗸 🗸	
Daily	
Weekly	
Monthly	
Quarterly	
Yearly	
Custom	

6. Click the drop-down button to specify the period on which the deleted files will be kept in the backup set.



7. Click the **OK** button to save the configured advanced Retention Policy, then click **Save** to store the settings.



For further details about how to configure an advanced Retention Policy for each type (i.e., Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, Yearly), refer to the examples below:

• **Example no. 1**: To keep the retention files for the last seven (7) days:

Name	
Daily-1	
Type Daily	
The past number of days on which different versions of you	r files are retained
7 🗸	

• **Example no. 2**: To keep the retention files for the last four (4) Saturdays:

Name
Weeky-1
Type Weekly
The days within a week on which different versions of your files are retained Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Sat
The number of weeks to repeat the above selection

• Example no. 3: To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each month for the last three (3) months:

į	
	Name
	Monthly-1
	Type Monthly
	The day within a month on which different versions of your files are retained
	🔾 First 🖌 Sunday 🖌
	The number of months to repeat the above selection

143

• Example no. 4: To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each quarter for the last four (4) quarters:

Name
Quarterly-1
Type Quarterly
The day within a quarter on which different versions of your files are retained
● Day 1
🔿 First 🖌 Sunday 🖌
Months of quarter
January, April, July, October 🛛 🖌
The number of quarters to repeat the above selection

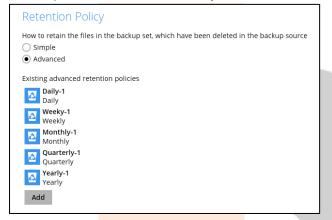


• **Example no. 5**: To keep the retention files for the 1<sup>st</sup> day of each year for the last seven (7) years:

· / J							
Name							
Yearly	-1						
Туре							
Yearly	~						
The da	y within a	a year	on which di	fferent	versions of	your files a	re retained
<ul> <li>Jar</li> </ul>	nuary	~					
ullet	Day 1	~					
0	First	¥	Sunday	¥			
() Su	nday	4	of Week 1	¥			
The nu	mber of y	/ears t	o repeat the	e above	selection		
7		~					

**NOTE:** Multiple Advanced Retention Policy can be created.

100



144



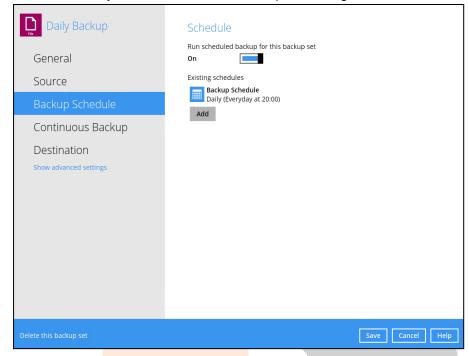
There are three (3) ways to run the Retention Policy:

- Backup Scheduler
- Manual Backup
- Space Freeing Up

### **Backup Scheduler (Recommended)**

To run a Retention Policy job after a scheduled backup job, follow the steps below:

1. Click the **Backup Schedule** tab in the backup set settings.



2. Select an existing backup schedule or add a new one.

Daily Backup	Schedule
General	Run scheduled backup for this backup set On
Source	Existing schedules Backup Schedule
Backup Schedule	Backup Schedule Daily (Everyday at 20:00) Add
Continuous Backup	
Destination	
Show advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

145



3. In the Backup Schedule window, select 'Run Retention Policy after backup' to run a Retention Policy job after a scheduled backup job.

Doily Package	
Backup Schedule	
Name Backup Schedule	
Туре	
Daily 💗 Start backup at	
Stop until full backup completed 🖌	
Run Retention Policy after backup	
Delete this backup schedule	OK Cancel Help
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help





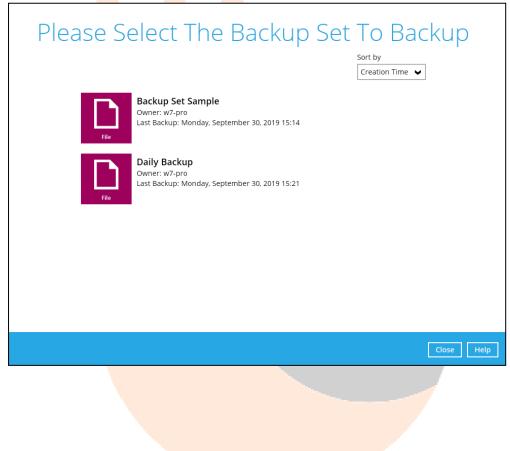
### Manual Backup

To run a Retention Policy job after a manual backup, follow the steps below:

1. Click the **Backup** icon in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) main interface.



2. Select the backup set that you would like to back up and run the Retention Policy job on.



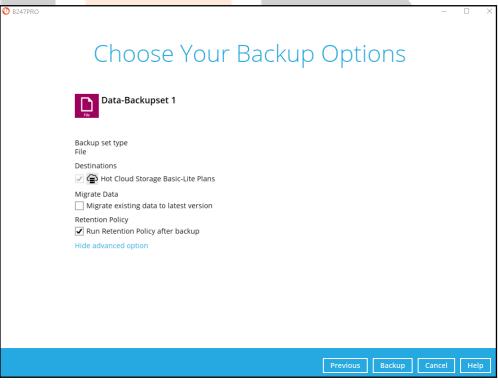




3. Click **Show advanced option** to display other settings.

Choo	ose You	r Backı	up Opti	ons		
Backup Se	et Sample					
Backup set type File						
Show advanced option	on					
			Previous	Backup	Cancel	Help

4. Select 'Run Retention Policy after backup' to run a Retention Policy job after a backup job.





### Space Freeing Up

To run a Retention Policy job manually using the Space Freeing Up feature, follow the steps below:

1. Click the Utilities icon on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) interface.



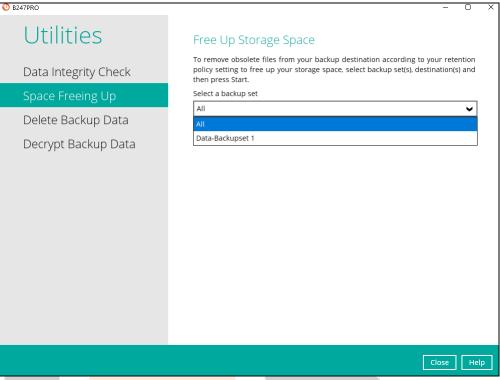
2. Select the **Space Freeing Up** tab in the Utilities settings.

Utilities	Free Up Storage Space
Data Integrity Check	To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
Delete Backup Data	Backup Set Sample
Decrypt Backup Data	All
	Start
	Close Help

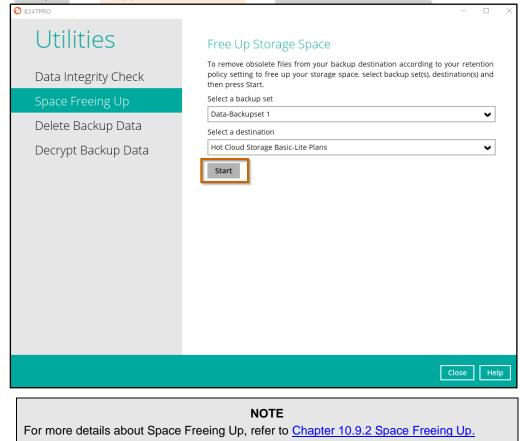
149



3. Select the corresponding backup set and destination (e.g., B247CBS, local drive, cloud storage) where you want the Retention Policy job to run on.



4. Click the **Start** button to run the Retention Policy job on the selected backup set(s) and backup destination(s).





## **Command Line Tool**

This feature allows the user to configure a pre-backup or post backup command which can be an operating system level command, a script or batch file, or third-party utilities to run before and/or after a backup job.

e.g., Connecting to a network drive and disconnecting a network drive, stopping a third-party database (not officially supported by Backup247) to perform a cold backup, and restarting a third-party database after a backup.

Data Backup	Pre-Backup Command Line Tool
General	Existing custom commands to run before backup  Add new pre-backup command line tool
Source Backup Schedule	Post-Backup Command Line Tool Existing custom commands to run after backup
Continuous Backup Destination	+ Add new post-backup command line tool
Deduplication Retention Policy	
Command Line Tool	
Reminder Bandwidth Control	
Others Hide advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

# **Requirements and Best Practices**

### Error and Exception Handling

Each pre-backup command or batch file should have an error and exception handling. If a prebackup command contains an error, although an unhandled error may not hinder the backup job process, and the backup job is successful, it will result to a status indicating completed backup with warning(s). For more details about backup report status, refer to Chapter 10.6 Reports.

### **Command or Batch File Compatibility**

Make sure that each command (pre-backup and post-backup) are tested thoroughly before including them to the backup job.

### **Scheduled Backup**

If the scheduled backup job is set to stop after x no. of hours, make sure that the duration of the running backup job will not be affected. You may need to adjust the number of hours in the backup schedule configuration. Please refer to <u>Backup Schedule</u> for more details.



### **Pre-backup Command Limitation**

A Windows reboot or shutdown must not be used in the pre-backup command. Otherwise, the machine will shut down immediately that will result to a status indicating "Backup not yet finished", which can be viewed in the B247CBS User Web Console. Please refer to <u>B247CBS</u> <u>Backup Reports</u> for more details.

User Profile	Backup Restore				
Backup Set	Backup Report for This User				
Settings					
Report					View Today
Statistics	Backup Set	Destination	Start Time	End Time	Status
	Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	13-Mar-2022 13:23 AEDT	13-Mar-2022 13:24 AEDT	ОК
Effective Policy	Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)		12-Mar-2022 20:00 AEDT		Missed Backup

### Post-backup Command Recommendation

It is recommended to include a timeout for a post-backup command to shut down the machine. The timeout must be adjusted until when the Advanced Client (B247PRO) sends the backup job status to the B247CBS.

In this example, the configured post-backup command is to shut down the machine that has a timeout set to ninety (90) seconds. The machine will shut down automatically after the specified time.

Post-Backup Command Line Tool	
Name	
Post-Backup-1	
Working Directory	
C:\	Change
Command	
shutdown /s /t 90	

This is to ensure that the Advanced Client (B247PRO) has enough time to complete the backup process in order to send the backup job status to the B247CBS before the machine shuts down. See screenshot below:



to this PC			
Renort	Packup Doport		
	r		
Backup set Data-Backupset 1 🖌	Destination	Hot Cloud Storage B	asic-Lite Plans 👻
og 13/03/2022 13:23 🖌		Show	All 🗸
Type Decuplication into: rite- c:\Osers\backu\oneDrive\b	Log ocuments/wy sales/my_pwsale_oos.loak , ouplicated i		Time
[Delete File] C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents`			3/2022 13:24:00
			3/2022 13:24:08 A
<ul> <li>[New File] 100% of "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Doct</li> <li>Start validating the presence and size of backup data</li> </ul>			3/2022 13:24:08
<ul> <li>File: "1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-13-13-23-50/0</li> </ul>			3/2022 13:24:11
File: "1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-13-13-23-50/0			3/2022 13:24:11
	data in destination "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"		3/2022 13:24:11
Total New Files = 2	ata in destination. Hot cloud storage basic-tite Plans		3/2022 13:24:11
Total New Directories = 3			3/2022 13:24:11
Total New Links = 0			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Updated Files = 3			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Attributes Changed Files = 0			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Deleted Files = 1			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Deleted Directories = 0			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Deleted Links = 0			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Moved Files = 0			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Dedupe Saving for this job = 7KB			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Backup Data Size for this job = 19KB			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Dedupe Saving for destination = 7KB			3/2022 13:24:11
Total Backup Data Size for destination = 425.9MB			3/2022 13:24:11
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "C:\"			3/2022 13:24:11
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "B:\"			3/2022 13:24:18
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "R:\"			3/2022 13:24:18
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "D:\"			3/2022 13:24:18
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "\\?\Volu	me{af8789d4-0ccb-4a18-b3ef-ae4061165b96}\"		3/2022 13:24:18
Deleting Shadow Copy snapshot for volume "\\?\Volu		13/0	3/2022 13:24:18
G Saving server information to destination.	,	13/0	3/2022 13:24:18
	6/blocks/2022-03-13-13-23-50 at destination Hot Cloud	Storage Basi 13/0	3/2022 13:24:19
Start running post-commands			3/2022 13:24:22
Finished running post-commands		13/0	3/2022 13:24:22
Deleting temporary file C:\Users\Backu\temp\16463!	98208096\Predefined@-1635843864160	13/0	3/2022 13:24:22
Backup Completed Successfully		13/0	3/2022 13:24:24
ogs per page   100 🖌			Page 1/1 🗸

#### NOTE

For more details about detailed backup report, refer to Chapter 10.6 Reports.

#### There are three (3) fields in the command line tool:

Field	Description					
Name	The user-defined name of the pre-backup or post-backup command.					
Working Directory	The location in the local machine which the pre-backup or post-backup command will run at, or the location of the command or created batch file.					
Command	The <b>pre-backup</b> or <b>post-backup</b> command which can be defined as a native command or command to execute a batch file, command, or a VBScript (exclusively for Windows).					

# **Pre-backup Command**

A pre-backup command is used to execute an action or process before the start of a backup job. To create a pre-backup command, follow the steps below:

1. Click the [+] button.



Pre-Backup Command Line Tool
Existing custom commands to run before backup
Add new pre-backup command line tool

2. Assign a desired name to the pre-backup command.

New Pre-Backup Command Line Tool
Name
Pre-Backup-1

3. Click the **Change** button to locate the working directory of the command.

Working Directory	
C:\	Change

4. Input a command to be run before a backup job. In this example, the pre-backup command will connect to a network drive before the backup process.

Command	
net use \\W8-PRO\share	

5. Click the **OK** button to save the created pre-backup command, then click the **Save** button to save settings.



6. Once the backup job is complete, click the button to display the backup report log where you can check if the pre-backup command has run successfully.

ype	Log		Time
0	Saving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server	11/03	/2021 10:03:32
ŏ	Start Backup [In-File Delta: Full]	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Õ	Using Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\.obm\temp\1635904484100\OBS@1635904548871	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	Start running pre-commands	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	[Pre-Backup-1] net use \\W8-PRO\share	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	[Pre-Backup-1] Local name	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	[Pre-Backup-1] Remote name \\W8-PRO\share	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	[Pre-Backup-1] Resource type Disk	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
0	[Pre-Backup-1] Status OK	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
0	[Pre-Backup-1] # Opens 2	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
0	[Pre-Backup-1] # Connections 1		/2021 10:03:33
0	[Pre-Backup-1] The command completed successfully.	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
0	[Pre-Backup-1]	11/03	/2021 10:03:33
Ð	Finished running pre-commands		/2021 10:03:33
Ð	Downloading server file list		/2021 10:03:33
0	Download valid index files from backup job "Current" to "C:\Users\Administrator\.obm\temp\1635904484100\OBS@1635		/2021 10:03:33
0	Downloading server file list Completed		/2021 10:03:33
0	Reading backup source from hard disk		/2021 10:03:34
0	Getting all files which have been moved		/2021 10:03:35
0	Getting all files which have been moved Completed		/2021 10:03:36
Ð	Reading backup source from hard disk Completed	11/03	/2021 10:03:36
gs p	ber page 50 V		Page 1/1

## Post-backup Command

A post-backup command is used to execute an action or process after a backup job. To create a post-backup command, follow the steps below:

1. Click the [+] button.

Pos	st-Backup Command Line Tool
Existi	ng custom commands to run after backup
+	Add new post-backup command line tool

2. Assign a desired name to the post-backup command.

New Post-Backup Command Line Tool
Name
Post-Backup-1

3. Click the **Change** button to locate the working directory of the command.

Working Directory	
C:\	Change

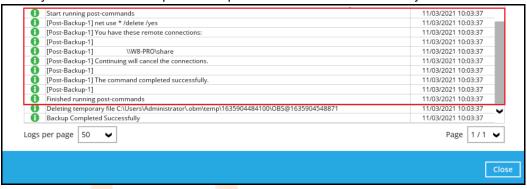
4. Input a command to be run after a backup job. In this example, the post-backup command will disconnect a network drive after the backup process.

Command	
net use * /delete /yes	

5. Click the **OK** button to save the created post-backup command, then click the **Save** button to save the settings.



6. Once the backup job is complete, click the button to display the backup report log where you can check if the post-backup command has run successfully.



NOTE

Multiple pre-backup and post-backup commands can be created in the Command Line Tool.

### Reminder

There are two types of Reminders that can be configured:

During Windows log off or shutdown - On (enabled) by default

4

When the last backup is over the set tolerance period - Off (disabled) by default

When either of the options are enabled, a backup confirmation dialog box will prompt the user to start a backup during Windows log off shutdown or when the latest backup job is over the configured tolerance period.

BackupSet-1	Reminder
General	Remind me to backup during Windows log off or shut down Off
Source	
Backup Schedule	
Continuous Backup	
Destination	
Deduplication	
Retention Policy	
Command Line Tool	
Reminder	
Bandwidth Control	
Others	
Hide advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help



To configure the Reminder settings, follow the steps below:

- Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set that you would like to enable the 1. Reminder option for.
- 2. Click the **Reminder** tab in the backup set settings.
- Swipe the lever to the right enable the reminder to start a backup during Windows log 3. off or shutdown.

Remir	ider						
Remind r <b>On</b>	ne to backup d	luring Windo	ws log off	or shut d	own		
Remind r Off	ne to backup w	vhen last bac	kup is ove	er my tolei	rance per	riod	
ipe the	l <mark>ever</mark> to th	ne r <mark>ight e</mark>	nable t	he oth	er rem	ninder	opt

Rem	nder
Remin <b>On</b>	me to backup during Windows log off or shut down
Remin	me to backup when last backup is over my tolerance period

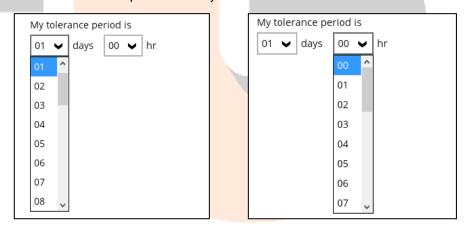
My tolerance period is 01 🖌 days

00 🖌 hr

157

4.

This will allow you to set the tolerance period by selecting the number of day(s) or hour(s). You may select from 1 - 31 days or 0 - 23 hours. When this option is enabled, the default tolerance period is 1 day.



When the latest backup is over the configured tolerance period, the following prompt to run a backup will be displayed.

	Off-line Backup	×
	Start Backup BackupSet-1 ?	Yes
	Last Backup: 2022-01-28 12:40	No
-		



5. Click Save to button to apply the Reminder settings.

#### NOTES

- 1. This feature is only supported on Windows 8.1 (and older) and Windows Server 2012 (and older).
- 2. The dialog box will only appear if there is a backup set with On (enabled) Reminder setting.
- During Windows log off or shutdown, the confirmation prompt will only be displayed for four (4) seconds.
- If there are multiple backup sets displayed, you cannot select one (1) backup set to back up. It is recommended to only enable the Reminder setting for the backup sets you regularly back up.

For more detailed examples of the Reminder feature for Windows log off, restart, and shutdown, please refer to <u>Appendix D: Example Scenarios for the Reminder</u>.

### Bandwidth Control

This option allows the user to limit the amount of bandwidth used by backup traffic between specified times. This feature is configured to be disabled by default.

BackupSet-1	Bandwidth Control
General	Limit the transfer rate when performing backup and restore tasks Off
Source	
Backup Schedule	
Continuous Backup	
Destination	
Deduplication	
Retention Policy	
Command Line Tool	
Reminder	
Bandwidth Control	
Others	
Hide advanced settings	
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

### There are two (2) different modes in assigning a bandwidth control:

Bandwidth Control Type	Description
Independent	Each backup and restore has its assigned bandwidth.
Share	All backup and restore operations are sharing the same assigned bandwidth.

**NOTE** Share mode does not support performing backup job on multiple destinations concurrently.



To enable the bandwidth control setting, follow the steps below:

1. Swipe the lever to the right to turn on the bandwidth control.



2. Select a bandwidth control mode.



3. If you want to add a modified bandwidth control, click the [+] button.



Complete the following fields:

- **Name** the name of the bandwidth control set.
- **Type** the type of enforced bandwidth control period.
- Maximum transfer rate the maximum bandwidth used.

WinOPM Backun

New Bandwidth Control

Name

Bandwidth Control-1

Type

Only within this period

Maximum transfer rate

To

K (bit/s)

OK (ancel)

Help

Peter this backup set

4. Click the **OK** button to save the created bandwidth control set, then click the **Save** button to save settings.



### Others

Below is the list of other configurable options under the advanced backup set settings:

- <u>Temporary Directory</u>
- Follow Link
- Volume Shadow Copy
- File Permissions
- OpenDirect
- <u>Compressions</u>
- Encryption

General Image: Change   Source 57.31GB free out of total 60GB space in E:   Backup Schedule Follow Link   Continuous Backup Follow Link   Destination Image: Change   Deduplication Volume Shadow Copy   Retention Policy Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup	BackupSet-1
Source Remove temporary files after backup   Backup Schedule Follow Link   Continuous Backup Follow Link   Destination on   Deduplication Volume Shadow Copy   Retention Policy Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup off	
Continuous Backup     Follow link of the backup files       Destination     on       Deduplication     Volume Shadow Copy       Retention Policy     Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup off	
Retention Policy Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup Off	
off	eduplication
Command Line room	etention Policy ommand Line Tool
Reminder Bandwidth Control Pn Prile Permissions Backup files' permissions Pn	
Bandwidth Control   on     Others   OpenDirect	
Hide advanced settings Support of opening backup data directly without restoration Delete this backup set Save Cancel Help	

# Temporary Directory

Temporary Directory is used for both backup and restore operations.

Temporary Directory	
Temporary directory for storing backup files	
E:\temp	Change
57.31GB free out of total 60GB space in E:	
<ul> <li>Remove temporary files after backup</li> </ul>	

For a **backup job**, it is used to temporarily store backup set index files. An updated set of index files is generated after each backup job. The index files are synchronized to each individual backup destination at the end of each backup job.

For a **restore job**, it is used to temporarily store temporary restore files.



#### NOTE

For best practice, the temporary directory should be located on a local drive for optimal backup and restore performance.

It should NOT be located on:

- Windows System C:\ drive, as the C:\ drive is used by Windows and other applications. There will be frequent disk I/O activity which may affect both backup and restore performance.
- o A network drive, as it could affect both backup and restore performance.

It is recommended to select the 'Remove temporary files after backup' option on the backup set to keep the temporary drive clear.

To change the Temporary Directory, follow the steps below:

Click the **Change** button to select a directory path for storing temporary data.

Temporary Directory	
Temporary directory for storing backup files	
E:\temp	Change
57.31GB free out of total 60GB space in E:	
Remove temporary files after backup	

2. Locate the directory that you would like to use, then click **OK** to select the folder. Click the **Save** button to apply the settings.

### **Follow Link**

This feature allows the user to enable or disable the follow link which defines the NTFS junction or symbolic link during a backup job. This option is enabled by default.

Follow Link Follow link of the backup files On					
NOTE					
This feature is only applicable for File Backup Sets.					

### Volume Shadow Copy

This feature allows the Advanced Client (B247PRO) to use the Windows Volume Shadow Copy service to create a snapshot of the selected files and/or folders on the local drive(s) of the machine, so that the Advanced Client (B247PRO) can continue to back up files even if they are opened and/or have been updated by the user. This feature is enabled by default.

1.



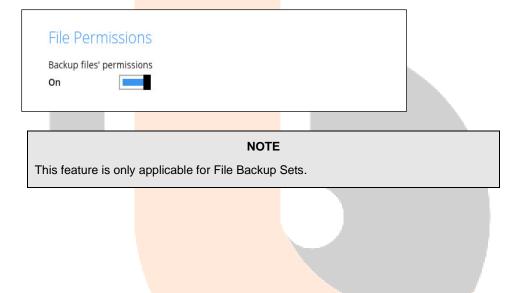


#### WARNING

- To use the Volume Shadow Copy, the license module must first be enabled on your backup user account. Otherwise, just enabling this setting on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) will not activate this feature and can result in possible backup errors if the backup job encounters an open file. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for more details.
- 2. Volume Shadow Copy does not support open file backups on network drives.

## File Permissions

This option defines whether to back up operating system file permission of the data selected as backup source. This option is enabled by default.





# OpenDirect

This feature is used to add additional restore options in restoring files from a File Backup Set. This feature can only be enabled during the creation of backup set. For more details about OpenDirect Restore, please refer to <u>Chapter 5 OpenDirect Restore</u>.

OpenDir	ect			
Support of or	ening backup da	ata directly with	out restoration	í.
Off				

#### WARNING

- To use this feature, the OpenDirect license module must first be enabled with the correct number of modules on your user account. If you enable this setting on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) without an OpenDirect license, or your account does not have enough OpenDirect licenses, then your backup job will not run. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for more details.
- 2. When OpenDirect is enabled, to optimize restore performance, both compression and encryption will be disabled for this backup set. Therefore, it is not recommended to assign your backup destination on a cloud or on an offsite location.
- 3. Once the OpenDirect is enabled and the setting is saved, it cannot be disabled without re-creating the backup set.

## Compressions

163

When this feature is enabled, the Advanced Client (B247PRO) will compress all files before it is backed up to the backup destination(s).

For newly created backup set(s), "Fast with optimization for local" is selected by default.

Compressions	
Select compression type	
Fast with optimization for local	~

The following are the four (4) compression types:

- No Compression
- Normal
- Fast (Compressed size larger than normal)
- Fast with optimization for local

#### NOTE

The compression type can be changed anytime, even after a backup job. The modified compression type will be applied on the next run of a backup.



# Encryption

This feature allows the user to view the current encryption settings. The encryption settings can only be enabled or disabled during the creation of backup set.

Encryption	
Encryption key Unmask encrypti	on key
Algorithm	AES
Method	CBC
Key length	256 bits

To view the Encryption key of the backup set, follow the steps below:

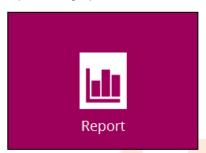
- 1. Go to Backup Sets, then select a backup set.
- 2. Click the **Others** tab in the backup set settings.
  - 3. In the Encryption, click the 'Unmask encryption key' link to display the encryption key of the backup set.

Encryption ke Unmask encry	yption key		
Algorithm	AES		
Method	CBC		
Key length	256 bits		
Encryption key Mask encryption Algorithm Method Key length	AbcDefGhi1234 key AES CBC 256 bits		
		NOTE	



# 10.6 Report

This feature allows the user to view the backup and restore reports and generate backup usage report in a graphical view.



There are three (3) functions available for this feature:

- Backup
- Restore
- > Usage

165

## 10.6.1 Backup

This feature displays the backup report logs for each backup set. There are four (4) filters that can be applied on this feature:

24/7

- Date
- Backup Set
- Destination
- Status

C B247PRO		– 🗆 ×
Report	Backup Report	
Backup	From         To           06         Mar         2021         13         Mar         2022         Go	
Restore	Backup set 🗸 Destination 🗸 Completion	Status 🗸
Usage	Data-Backupset 1 🔄 Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Today 13:24	Completed
00080	Data-Backupset 1 🛛 谷 Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans 04/03/2022 23:55	Completed
	No. of records per page 50 V	Page 1/1 🗸
		Close Help



## Date

B247PRO		– 🗆 X
Report	Backup Report	
Backup	From To 06 V Mar V 2021 V 13 V Mar V 2022 V Go	
Restore	Backup set V Destination V Completion	Status 🗸
Usage	Data-Backupset 1 😭 Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Today 13:24	Completed
Usage	Data-Backupset 1 🚽 Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans 04/03/2022 23:55	Completed
	No. of records per page 50 V	Page 1/1 🗸
		Close Help

# Backup set

Use this filter to display all the available backup set(s) with a backup report. Then select which backup set with backup report that you would like to view.

0 B247PRO		- 🗆 ×
Report	Backup Report	
Backup	From To 06 W Mar V 2021 V 13 W Mar V 2022 V Go	
Restore	Backup set   Destination   Completion	Status 🗸
Usage	Backup set       Image: Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans       Today 13:24         Data-Backupset 1       Image: Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans       04/03/2022 23:55	Completed Completed
	No. of records per page 50 V	Page 1/1 🖌
		Close Help

Use this filter to display all the available backup report(s) within a date range.



### Destination

<b>D</b> B247PRO			×
Report	Backup Report		
Backup	From To 06 Mar 2021 13 Mar 2022 Go		
Restore	Backup set 🗸 Destination 🗸 Completion Status	~	
Usage	Data-Backupset 1     Destination     Today 13:24     Completed     4/03/2022 23:55     Completed		
	No. of records per page 50 V Page		ip.

## Use this filter to view the backup report for the selected storage location

# Status

167

Use this filter to view all the backup report(s) with the same status (i.e., Completed, Warning, Interrupted, Interrupted with error(s), Failed and In progress).

U B24/PRO		- U X
Report	Backup Report	
Backup	From         To           06         Mar         2021         13         Mar         2022         Go	
Restore	Backup set 🗸 Destination 🗸 Completion	Status 🗸
Usage	Data-Backupset 1       Image: Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans       Today 13:24         Data-Backupset 1       Image: Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans       04/03/2022 23:55	Status Completed
	No. of records per page 50 🖌	Page 1/1 🖌
		Close Help



To view the backup log, follow the instructions below:

Select and click the backup report, then click the **View log** button.

🕑 B247PRO	- O X
Report	Backup Report
Backup	From To 06 V Mar V 2021 13 V Mar V 2022 V Go
Restore	Backup set 🗸 Destination 🗸 Completion Status 🗸
Usage	Backup set       Data-Backupset 1         Destination       Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans         Job       13/03/2022 13:23         Time       Today 13:23 - 13:24 (AEST)         Status       Completed successfully         New files *       2 [7.7KB/11.8KB (34%)]         Updated files *       3 [7.8KB/7.8KB (0%)]         Attributes Changed Files *       0         Moved files *       0         Deleted files *       1 [6.9KB/6.9KB (0%)]         Dedupe Saving       7.6K/19.6K [38.7%]         * Unit = No of files [Total zipped size / Total unzipped size (compression ratio)]         View log         Data-Backupset 1       Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite 04/03/2022 23: Completed         No. of records per page       50 ✓
	Close Help

2. The Backup set, Destination, Log Date and Time, Status, the number of Logs per page, and Page can be filtered when viewing the backup report.

acku	up set Data-Backupset 1 🖌 Destination Hot Cloud Sto	rage Ba	sic-Lite Plans
og 🛛	13/03/2022 13:23 🗸	Show	All
Гуре	Log		Time
0	Start [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]	13/03/	2022 13:23:51
Õ	Start Backup [Deduplication: enabled, Deduplication scope: All files within the same backup set, Migrate Delta: enabled]	13/03/	2022 13:23:53
Õ	Using Temporary Directory C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160	13/03/	2022 13:23:53
Õ	Start Periodic Data Integrity Check on backup set = "default-backup-set-name-1" destination = "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"	13/03/	2022 13:23:57
0	Start data integrity check on backup set "default-backup-set-name-1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc dis	13/03/	2022 13:23:57
0	Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"	13/03/	2022 13:23:57
0	Download valid index files from backup job "2022-03-04-23-52-44" to "C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index".	13/03/	2022 13:23:59
0	Vacuuming index	13/03/	2022 13:23:59
0	Vacuuming index Completed	13/03/	2022 13:23:59
0	Existing statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.19M	13/03/	2022 13:24:00
0	Recalculated statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180	13/03/	2022 13:24:00
0	The statistics of backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is correct.	13/03/	2022 13:24:00
0	Data integrity check on backup set= "default-backup-set-name-1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is completed	13/03/	2022 13:24:01
0	Finished data integrity check on backup set "default-backup-set-name-1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc		2022 13:24:02
0	Completed data integrity check on backup set "default-backup-set-name-1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", c		2022 13:24:02
0	Start running pre-commands		2022 13:24:02
0	Finished running pre-commands		2022 13:24:02
Q	Downloading server file list		2022 13:24:02
0	Download valid index files from backup job "2022-03-04-23-52-44" to "C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index".		2022 13:24:02
Q	Downloading server file list Completed		2022 13:24:03
Q	Start creating Shadow Copy Set		2022 13:24:04
Q	Creating Shadow Copy for all volumes: C: B: R: D: \\?\Volume{af8789d4-0ccb-4a18-b3ef-ae4061165b96} \\?1b0a3ff2-406b-4928-a98e-28		2022 13:24:04
Q	Shadow Copy Set successfully created		2022 13:24:07
0	Reading backup source from hard disk	13/03/	2022 13:24:07

168

1.



## 10.6.2 Restore

This feature displays the restore report logs for each backup set. Similar to the **Backup** tab, this feature also consists of the following filters:

- Date
- Backup Set
- Destination
- Status

S247PRO		_	
Report	Restore Report		
Backup	From To 06 V Mar V 2022 V 13 V Mar V 2022 V Go		
Restore	Backup set 🗸 Destination 🗸 Job	Status	<b>~</b>
Usage	Data-Backupset 1	Completed	
	No. of records per page 50 V	Page 1 / 1	•
		Close	Help

To view the restore log, follow the instructions below:

1. Select and click the restore report, then click the **View log** button.



O B247PRO				_		×
Report	Restore Report					
Backup	From 06 🗸 Mar 🖌 202	To 22 V 13 V Mar V 2022 V	Go			
Restore	Backup set 🔍	Destination	✔ Job	Status	~	
Usage	Destination d Job 1 Time T Status .			Page 1/1	~	
				Close	Help	

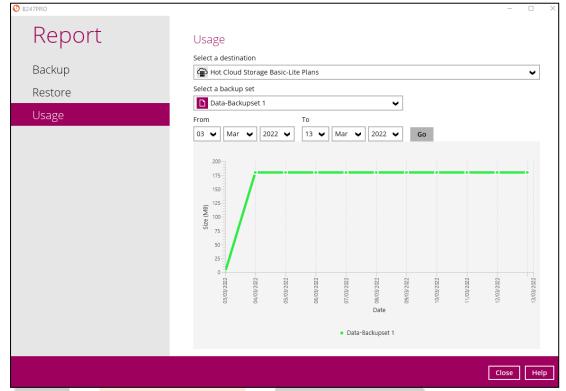
2. The Backup set, Destination, Log Date and Time, Status, the number of Logs per page, and Page can be filtered when viewing the restore report.

47PRO			- 0
Re	nort Destars Depart		
Backup s	et Data-Backupset 1 🖌		
		a. [	
.og 13/	03/2022 18:33 🖌	Show	All 🗸
Туре	Log		Time
	art [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]		03/2022 18:33:01
	eating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Restore\B_"		03/2022 18:33:02
	eating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Restore\B_\email archive"		03/2022 18:33:02
1 Do	wnloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Restore\B_\email archive\Re Website Review part 2.msg" (Total 6.75M bytes)		03/2022 18:33:08
1 Do	wnloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Restore\B_\email archive\Re FW images + text reduction.msg" (Total 4.66M bytes)		03/2022 18:33:09
1 Do	wnloading "CnUsers\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Restore\B_\email archive\Re FW images + text reduction.msg" (Total 4.66M bytes) store Completed Successfully		13/2022 18:33:09 13/2022 18:33:11
🚺 Do			



## 10.6.3 Usage

This feature allows the user to display the storage and usage information in a graphical view for the selected backup set and backup destination within the specific date range.



Storage statistics

**Total Size:** displays the total amount of backed up data on the backup destination

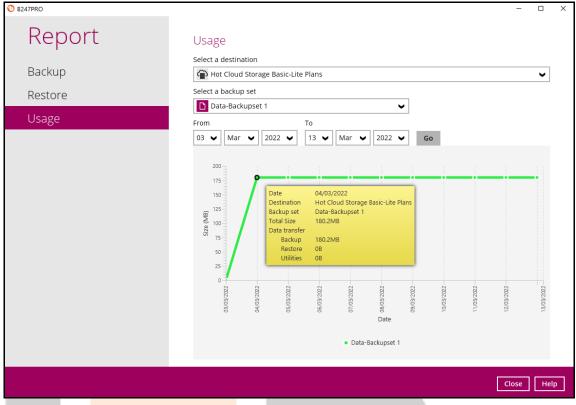
The storage statistics of a backup set is updated every time the following functions are run:

- 1. Backup job
- 2. Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC)
- 3. Data Integrity Check (DIC)
- 4. Space Freeing Up
- 5. Delete Backup Data



### Example:

The data transfer statistics will pop up when you click over a specific date from the graph.



- Data Transfer statistics:
  - Backup: displays the amount of data transferred to the backup destination for backups
  - Restore: displays the amount of data transferred from the backup destination for restores
  - Utilities: displays the amount of data transferred from the backup destination, when a Data Integrity Check (DIC) is run with the "Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check" option selected



# 10.7 Restore

This feature is used to restore backed up files to its original or alternate location.



To restore backed up files, follow the instructions on Chapter 14 Restore Data.

## 10.8 Settings

This feature allows the user to enable the **Proxy Settings** and **Windows Event Log**.



173

There are three (3) functions available for this feature:

- Proxy
- Windows Event Log
- Mobile Backup

**NOTE:** The Mobile Backup tab will only be available if the mobile add-on module is enabled on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) account. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for details.



Settings	Proxy (HTTP)
Proxy	Use proxy to access the Internet Off
Windows Event Log	
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help

### 10.8.1 Proxy

174

When this feature is on, Advanced Client (B247PRO) will use a proxy to gain access to the internet.

To enable the Proxy Settings, follow the instructions below:

1. Slide the lever to the right to turn on this feature.

Settings	Proxy (HTTP)
Proxy	Use proxy to access the Internet Off
Windows Event Log	
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help

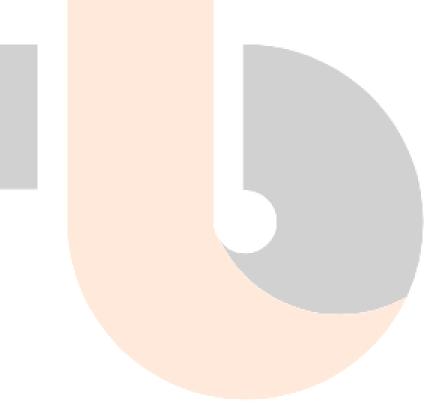
- 2. Complete the following fields:
  - IP address
  - Port



- Login ID
- Password

Use proxy to access the Internet	
On 📃	
IP address	Port
Login ID	
Password	
•••••	

- 3. Click the **Test connection** button to validate the connection.
- 4. Click the **Save** button to apply the settings.





### 10.8.2 Windows Event Log

When this feature is enabled, all Advanced Client (B247PRO) system log information will be written under **Applications and Services Logs**. The user may access them through **Windows event viewer** in the local machine.

O B247PRO	- D X
Settings Proxy Windows Event Log	Windows Event Log.   write B247PRO's logs to Windows Event Log.   type:   on   Con   Con </td
	Save Cancel Help

**NOTE:** This feature is only applicable for Windows OS.



### 10.8.3 Mobile Backup

The Mobile Backup tab is only available if the mobile add-on module is enabled on the user profile. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for details.

You can use the Mobile backup function to:

> Add one or more device(s) registered for mobile backup.

NOTE Please refer to Chapter 7 of the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) User Guide for Android and iOS for the detailed step-by-step procedure.

- View backed up photos, videos and documents saved in the mobile backup  $\geq$ destination.
- Change the mobile backup destination to:  $\succ$ 
  - new location in the same machine •
  - 24/7 new machine
- Remove one or more device(s) registered for mobile backup.  $\triangleright$

### NOTE

For the restore of photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts to an alternate mobile device, the other mobile devices must be registered first for mobile backup on Advanced Client (B247PRO).

- Restore to a different mobile device on the same operating system. •
- Restore to a different mobile device on another operating system, i.e., Android to iOS or . iOS to Android.

Settings	Mobile Backup
Proxy	Registered Mobile Device(s) Add
Windows Event Log	
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help
	Save Cancel Help

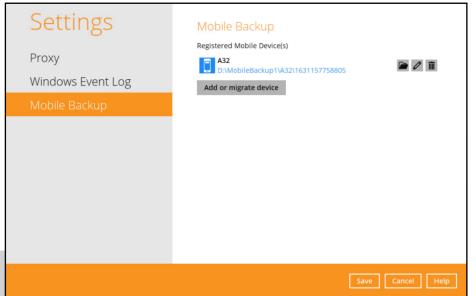




# View backed up photos, videos and documents saved in the mobile backup destination

To view backed up photos, videos and documents saved in the mobile backup destination, follow the instructions below:

1. Either click the link under the registered mobile device or click the **Browse** icon on the right side of the registered mobile device.



 A new window will be displayed, double-click the **blocks** folder, then open the folder with the filename "YYYY-MM-DD-hh-mm-ss", which is the date and time of the backup. This contains the folders where the photos, videos and documents are saved.

🕒 🕙 🔹 🕇 🚺 «	< MobileBackup1 + A32 + 1631157758805 +	~ C	Search 1631157758805	م ر
🔆 Favorites	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
Desktop	퉬 blocks	9/9/2021 12:12 PM	File folder	
Downloads				
🔚 Recent places				
€ 🕘 ד ↑ 📕 <	< A32 > 1631157758805 > blocks >	v ¢	Search blocks	۶
🔶 Favorites	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
Desktop	2021-09-09-12-12-05	9/9/2021 12:12 PM	File folder	
<b>1</b>	De aleva	9/9/2021 12:12 PM	Data Base File	
📕 Downloads	🚳 Backup	5/ 5/ 2021 12:12 FIVI	Data Date File	
Downloads E Recent places	🔞 васкир	5/ 5/ 2021 12:12 FWI	but buse me	
Recent places € ⊚ ▼ ↑ ↓	Васкир < 1631157758805 ► blocks ► 2021-09-09-12-12 Name		Search 2021-09-09-12	
Recent places	< 1631157758805 > blocks > 2021-09-09-12-12 Name	2-05 ▶ ∨ ¢	Search 2021-09-09-12	-12 🖇
<ul> <li>Recent places</li> <li></li></ul>	< 1631157758805 blocks > 2021-09-09-12-12	2-05 > v C Date modified	Search 2021-09-09-12	-12 🖇
<ul> <li>Recent places</li> <li>♦ Image: I</li></ul>	< 1631157758805 > blocks > 2021-09-09-12-12 Name	2-05 > v C Date modified	Search 2021-09-09-12	-12 🎜 Size
<ul> <li>Recent places</li> <li>Favorites</li> <li>Desktop</li> <li>Downloads</li> <li>Recent places</li> </ul>	< 1631157758805 > blocks > 2021-09-09-12-12 Name	2-05 ► ✓ C Date modified 9/9/2021 12:12 PM	Search 2021-09-09-12 Type File folder Search 0	-12 🔎

3. Once done, click the [X] button to exit.



# Change mobile backup destination location to new location in the same machine

These are scenarios upon changing the mobile backup destination to a new location in the same local machine:

### 1. Move to a new location in the same machine with enabled Free up space.

If Free up space is enabled on the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, it is strongly recommended to copy the previously backed up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts to the new location to prevent missing data. As some of the backed-up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts have already been removed from the mobile device.

In case the previously backed up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts were not copied to the new location, even though the backup will re-upload all the photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts again from the mobile device, this will not include the photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts removed by the Free up space feature.

### 2. Move to a new location in the same machine with disabled Free up space.

If Free up space is disabled on the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, there are two (2) options available, copy the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts to the new location or continue to back up in the new location.

In case the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts were not copied to the new location, the backup will re-upload all the photos, videos and 2FA accounts again from the mobile device.

To change the mobile backup destination to another drive or folder on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine, follow the instructions below:

Example: Change backup destination

from

179

C:\Users\Adm<mark>inistrator\Documents\A</mark>dvanced Client (B247PRO)\%<mark>registered\_mobile\_devic</mark>e%\%backupsetID%

to

### D:\MobileBackup1

- 1. From the old location, secure a copy of the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts.
- 2. Copy the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts from the original location to the new mobile backup destination (if applicable).
- 3. Go to **Settings** > **Mobile Backup**. Click the **Edit** icon on the right side of the registered mobile device.



In this example, the old mobile backup destination is C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\%registered\_mobile\_device%\ %backupsetID%

Settings	Mobile Backup
Proxy Windows Event Log	Registered Mobile Device(s)           A32         C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\A32\           Add or migrate device         Image: Comparison of the second
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help

4. **Change** path for Backup Destination screen will be displayed. Select a new mobile backup destination then click **OK**.

In this example, the new mobile backup destination will be D:\MobileBackup1.

Settings	Mobile Backup	
Proxy Windows Event Log_	Registered Mobile Device(s) A32 C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\A32\	
	Change path for Backup Destination Look In: → New Volume (D:) → E ☆ ET+	×
	Recent Items       MobileBackup1         Destop       MSQL         Documents       system         Documents       user         This PC       Folder name : D:\MobileBackup1         Network       Files of type : All Files	OK Cancel

Г



5. Click **Save** to store the change made.

Mobile backup destination is successfully changed to **D:\MobileBackup1**. All mobile backups will now be saved to this destination.

Settings Proxy Windows Event Log	Mobile Backup Registered Mobile Device(s) A32 D:\MobileBackup1\A32\1631157758805 Add or migrate device
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help

### NOTE

The %registered\_mobile\_device% and %backupsetID% will be appended automatically to the new mobile backup destination.

6. Resume the backup job.

🔕 B2	247 N	lobile	\$	K	
A32					
Last Back	cup	Yesterday,	12:04:55	5	
		-			
▲ Ba	ckup	۶Re	store		
<b>≜</b> Ba	ckup	<b>₽</b> Re	estore		
<b>▲</b> Ba <b>↑</b> Home	ckup the second	ନ Re ଅନ୍ତି	estore E More		



### Change mobile backup destination location to new machine

#### Move to a new machine with enabled or disabled Free up space due to upgrade.

If the machine needs upgrading, the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts are still available.

If Free up space is enabled on the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app, it is strongly recommended to copy the previously backed up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts to the new machine to prevent missing data. As some of the backed-up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts have already been removed from the mobile device.

Even if Free up space is disabled, it is recommended to copy the previously backed up photos, videos and 2FA accounts to the new machine. Otherwise, the backed-up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts on the mobile device will be backed up again from scratch.

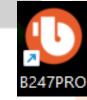


- If the machine is lost or stolen, changing the mobile destination is not supported as it is required to re-register your mobile devices on Advanced Client (B247PRO) and perform backup of backed up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts again.
- Changing the mobile backup destination to a new machine with a different operating system is supported, e.g., from a Windows machine to macOS machine or macOS machine to Windows machine etc.

To change the mobile backup destination to a new machine, follow the instructions below:

**Example:** Changing the mobile backup destination from an old Windows machine to a new macOS machine.

1. On the new machine, install Advanced Client (B247PRO).



182

2. Copy the .pro folder from the old Windows machine to the new macOS machine.

$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ This PC $\rightarrow$ Windows (C:) $\rightarrow$ Users $\rightarrow$ Backu					
> 🔶 Ouick access	Name ^	Date modified	Туре	Size	
	🚞 .@win.app.product.id@	12/05/2019 3:24	File folder		
> OneDrive - Personal	ldɔ. 💳	4/11/2021 9:19	File folder		
> 📮 This PC	📒 .InstallAnywhere	21/07/2019 10:2	File folder		
> 🖆 Network	obm 🔁 .obm	17/04/2022 1:28	File folder		
	.oracle_jre_usage	13/10/2019 10:3	File folder		
	늘 .pro	4/03/2022 11:29	File folder		



	😭 admin			
$\langle \rangle$			0	Search
Favorites	Name	Date Modified	Size	Kind ^
AirDrop	.DS_Store	6:37 PM	18 KB	Document
		4/29/21		Folder
All My Files	anydesk	11/29/20		Folder
🛆 iCloud Dri	.bash_sessions	6:35 PM		Folder
Applicatio		4/28/21		Folder
		4/27/21		Folder
Desktop	▶ <u>■</u>	4/27/21		Folder
Documents	▶ 📄 .obm	6:39 PM		Folder
Downloads	Alternate Folder	3/17/21		Folder
Downloads	C/\Temp\	4/28/21		Folder
Devices	Desktop	4/27/21		Folder

3. Copy the previously backed up photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from the old machine to the new mobile backup destination.

### NOTE

During machine upgrade, make sure to uninstall the Advanced Client (B247PRO) from the old machine to avoid any interruptions while backing up on the new machine.

 Restart the Advanced Client (B247PRO) Services because copying the .obm folder on a newly installed Advanced Client (B247PRO) will not trigger the MBS.

#cd /Applications/Advanced Client (B247PRO).app/bin
#sh StopScheduler.sh
#sh Scheduler.sh

 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO). Enter the login name and password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) account. Then, click OK to log in

	English 🗸
Login	
Login name	
MobileUser	
Password	
•••••	
Save password	
Show advanced option O	к

6. Go to **Settings** > **Mobile Backup**. Click the **Edit** icon on the right side of the registered mobile device.



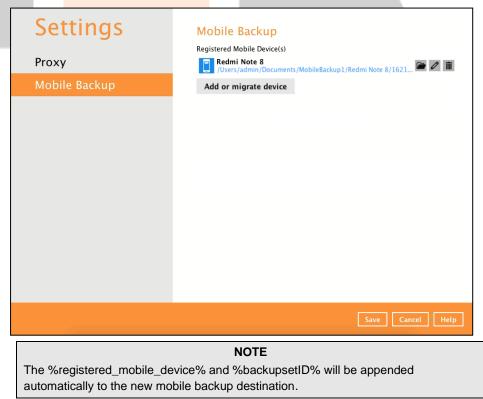
7. A new screen will be displayed, select the new mobile backup destination then click **Open**.

In this example, the new mobile backup destination will be /Users/admin/Documents/MobileBackup1.

Proxy		Redmi	Note 8 bileBackup1\Redmi No	ote 8\16213	32909429		
Mobile Ba	ackup						
()		🔲 📖 🛛 🗋 Doc	uments 🗘	₫		Search	
	Favorites	Name	Date Modified		Size	Kind	
	C iCloud Drive	MobileBackup1	Today, 5:55 PM			Folder	
	Applications	MobileBackup2	Today, 5:11 PM	.50 414		Folder	
	Desktop	Photos     Test Files	Apr 27, 2021, 11 Apr 27, 2021, 12			Folder	
	Documents	Videos	Apr 27, 2021, 11			Folder	
	O Downloads						
	· ·						
	Tags						
	Red						
	Orange						
	Yellow						
	Green						
	Blue						
	Purple						
	Gray						

8. Click **Save** to store the changes made.

Mobile backup destination is successfully changed to /Users/admin/Documents/MobileBackup1. All mobile backups will now be saved to this destination.





9. Resume the backup job.

🔕 B24	47 Mobile		\$	
Redmi N	ote 8			
Last Backup			a minute ago	
L B	ackup	<b>D</b> Re	estore	
•	ı	()) ())	$\equiv$	bAP

### NOTE

For instructions on changing the mobile backup destination of:

- a macOS machine to a Windows machine, refer to Chapter 9.8.2 of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8 Quick Start Guide for Mac.
- a Linux machine to a Windows machine please refer to Chapter 9.8.2 of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8 Quick Start Guide for Linux (GUI).

### Remove one or more device(s) registered for Mobile Backup

To remove a mobile device, follow the instructions below:

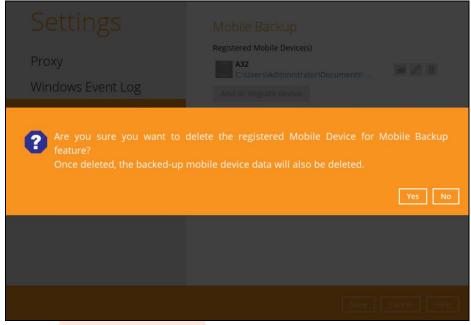
1. Click the **Delete** icon on the right side of the registered mobile device.

Settings	Mobile Backup
Proxy Windows Event Log	Registered Mobile Device(s)          A32       C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\         Add or migrate device
Mobile Backup	Add of hingrate device
	Save Cancel Help





2. A confirmation message will appear, click Yes to proceed. Otherwise, click No.



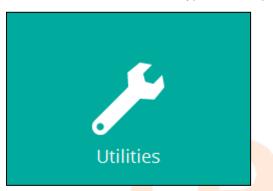
3. Mobile device is successfully removed along with any photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts backed up in the mobile backup destination.

Settings Proxy Windows Event Log	Mobile Backup Registered Mobile Device(s) Add or migrate device
Mobile Backup	
	Save Cancel Help



## 10.9 Utilities

This allows the user to perform quality check on the backed-up data, free up storage from obsolete files, delete, and decrypt backed up data.



There are four (4) options available for this feature:

- Data Integrity Check 24
- Space Freeing Up
- Delete Backup Data
- Decrypt Backup Data

### 10.9.1 Data Integrity Check

187

The Data Integrity Check (DIC) is used to identify the data in the backup set that has indexrelated issues, remove any corrupted file(s) from the backup destination(s) to ensure the integrity of the backup data and its restorability, and update the storage statistics.

For an efficient management of overall storage size of the backup destination(s), the data integrity check job will perform check for the backup destination(s) to remove old index files that are more than ninety (90) days old in the backup job folder(s).

There are four (4) options in performing the Data Integrity Check:

Settings	Function
Option 1  Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index Start	For checking of index and data.
Option 2 Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index Start	For checking of index and integrity of files against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job.



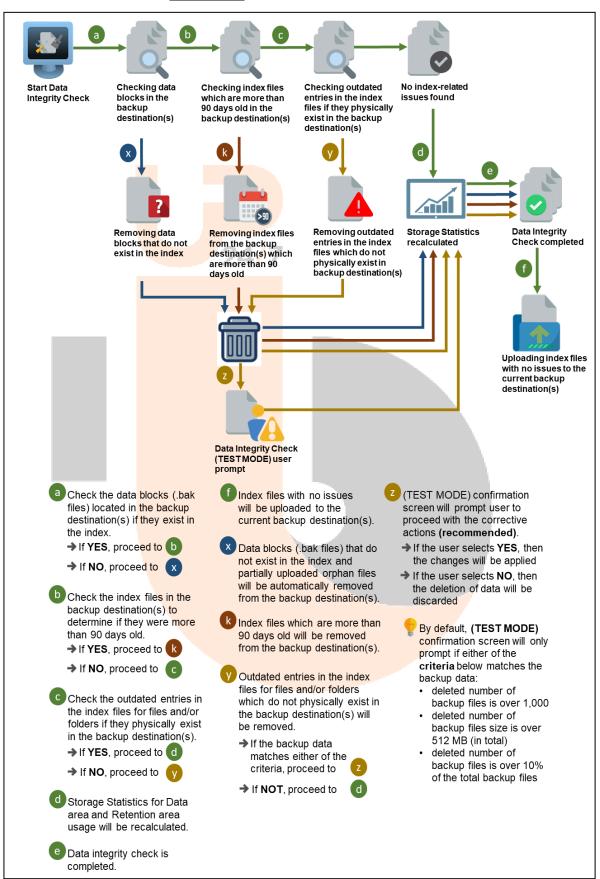
Option 3 Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index Start	For checking and rebuilding of index.
Option 4 Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index Start	For checking of index, integrity of files against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job and rebuilding of index.

The following diagrams show the detailed process of the Data Integrity Check (DIC) in four (4) modes:

- Option 1
   <u>Disabled</u> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index (Default mode)
- Option 2
   <u>Enabled</u> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and <u>Disabled</u> Rebuild index
- Option 3
   <u>Disabled</u> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and <u>Enabled</u> Rebuild index
- Option 4
   <u>Enabled</u> Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index

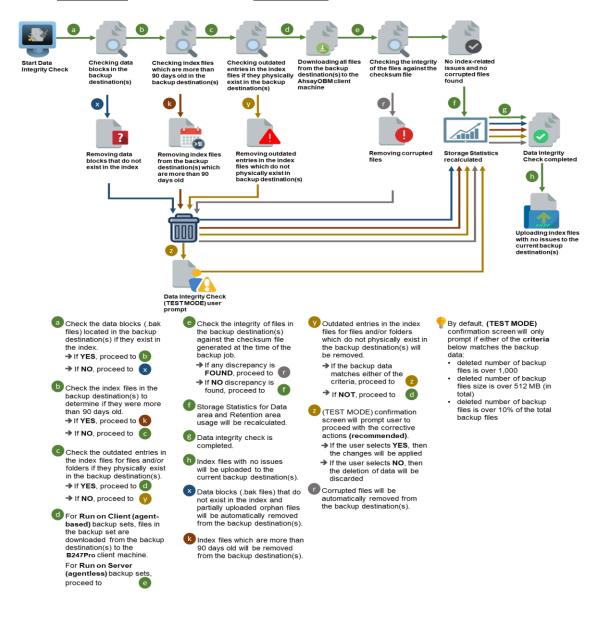


# **Option 1** - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cylic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index **DISABLED** (Default mode)



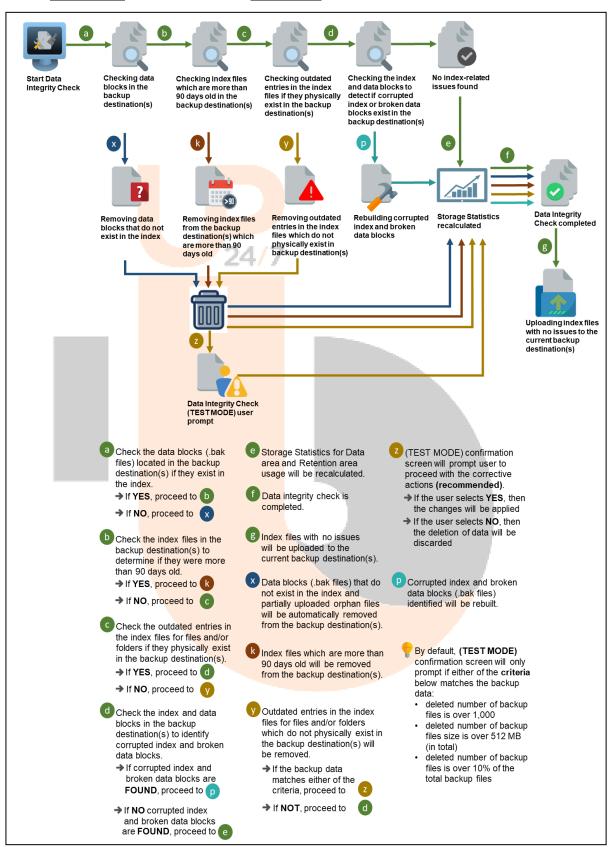


# **Option 2** - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cylic Redundancy Check (CRC) **ENABLED** and Rebuild index **DISABLED**



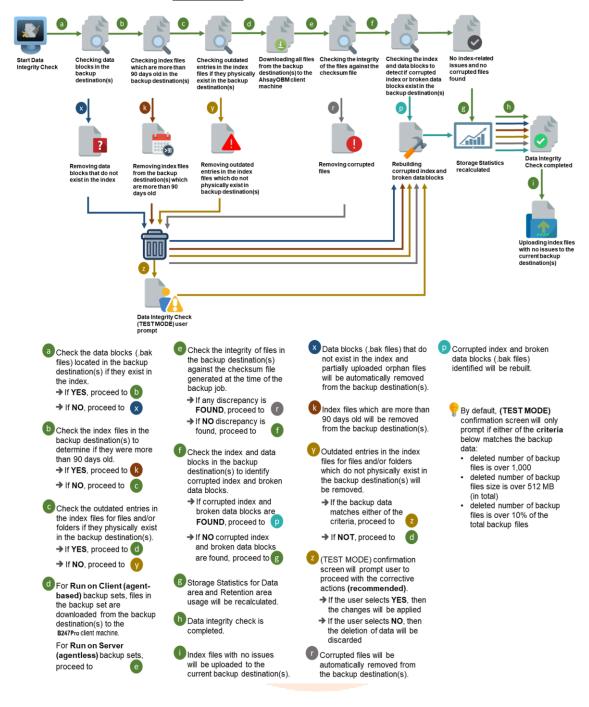


# **Option 3** - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cylic Redundancy Check (CRC) **<u>DISABLED</u>** and Rebuild index **<u>ENABLED</u>**





**Option 4** - Data Integrity Check (DIC) Process with Run Cylic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index **ENABLED** 





Utilities	Data Integrity Check
Data Integrity Check	Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability
Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	Select a backup set          All <ul> <li>Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check</li> <li>Rebuild index</li> </ul> Start
	Close Help
	NOTES
1. Data Integrity Check CA	NNOT fix or repair files that are already corrupted.
2 Data Integrity Check car	n only be started if there is NO active backup or restore

2. Data Integrity Check can only be started if there is NO active backup or restore job(s) running on the backup set selected for the DIC job. As the **backup**, **restore** and **data integrity check** are using the same index for read and write operations. Otherwise, an error message will be displayed in the post-DIC to indicate that the data integrity check is completed with error(s) and had skipped a backup set with an active backup job.



The following screenshot is an example of a Data Integrity Check completed with error(s). A Data Integrity Check is run on a backup set with an active backup job running which resulted the Data Integrity Check to stop with error(s). Clicking the **View log** button will display the details of the Data Integrity Check job error(s).

Utilities	Data Integrity Check	
Data Integrity Check	Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integri Select a backup set	ity and restorability
Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	BackupSet-8         Select a destination         All         Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check         Rebuild index         X Data Integrity Check is completed with error(s)         View log	▼ ▼
		Close Help
Utilities	Data Integrity Check	
<ul> <li>Skipped Backup Set = "BackupSet-8". Reason =</li> <li>Finished data integrity check with error on bac</li> </ul>	Log upSet-8(1635931304079)" all destination, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled "Backup job "BackupSet-8" is still running." Kup set "BackupSet-8(1635931304079)" all destination, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled "BackupSet-8(1635931304079)" all destination, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled	Show All Time 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02
Type Start [B247PR0 v9.1.0.0] Start data integrity check on backup set "Backu Skipped Backup Set = "BackupSet-8". Reason = Finished data integrity check with error on bac Completed data integrity check on backup set	upSet-8(1635931304079)" all destination, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled "Backup job "BackupSet-8" is still running." kup set "BackupSet-8(1635931304079)" all destination, crc disabled, rebuild index disabled	Show All Time 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02 11/03/2021 17:23:02



### To perform a Data Integrity Check, follow the instructions below:

### Go to the Data Integrity Check tab in the Utilities menu.

Data Integrity Check       restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check         Decrypt Backup Data       Rebuild index         Start       Start	Data Integrity Check       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability.         Space Freeing Up       Image: Check (CRC) during data integrity check         Delete Backup Data       Rebuild index         Decrypt Backup Data       Start         Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.       Ethor (CRC)         Utilities       Data Integrity Check         Partor health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability.         Space Freeing Up       All         Data Integrity Check       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability.         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability.         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Backup.set         Delete Backup Data       Backup.set         Delete Backup Data       Backup.set         Decrypt Backup Data       Backup.set	The second se	
Data Integrity Check       restorability         Space Freeing Up       All       Image: Check (CRC) during data integrity check         Decrypt Backup Data       Rebuild index       Image: Check (CRC) during data integrity check         Decrypt Backup Data       Start         Close If the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities       Data Integrity Check         Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Backup.1         Backup.1       Backup.2	Data Integrity Check restorability   Space Freeing Up I   Delete Backup Data Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check.   Decrypt Backup Data Start     Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.     Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Delete Backup Data Derypt Backup Data Derypt Backup Data Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Derypt	Utilities	Data Integrity Check
Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Back	Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Cuss UtilitieS Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Deta Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	Data Integrity Chack	
Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data   Rebuild index   Start     Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.     Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Delete Backup Data     All   Backup,1   Backup,2	Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index Start Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Decrypt Backed Decrypt Backup Decrypt Backed Decrypt Back		-
Decrypt Backup Data Rebuild index   Start     Start     Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.     Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   All   Delete Backup Data   Backup.1   Backup.2	Decrypt Backup Data     Rebuild index     Stat     Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.     Data Integrity Check     Data Integrity Check     Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data     Backup Data     Backup Data     Backup Data     Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data     Backup Data     Backup 1   Backup 2   Stat	Space Freeing Up	All
Decrypt Backup Data   Start     Cloce   Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and resability select a backup set.   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data   Backup_1   Backup_2	Decrypt Backup Data Surt  Surt  Corse Integrity Check  Data Integrity Check  Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	Delete Backup Data	
Clock the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Decrypt Backup Data	
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.		Start
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data     All   Backup.1   Backup.2   Start		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set. Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data		
Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.         Utilities         Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         All         Delete Backup Data         Decrypt Backup Data	Click the drop-down button to select a backup set.   Utilities   Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up   Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data		
Utilities       Data Integrity Check         Data Integrity Check       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Backup_1         Decrypt Backup Data       Backup_2	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		
Utilities       Data Integrity Check         Data Integrity Check       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       Backup_1         Decrypt Backup Data       Backup_2	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		Close
Data Integrity Check       Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability         Space Freeing Up       All         Delete Backup Data       All         Decrypt Backup Data       Backup_1         Backup_2       Backup_2	Data Integrity Check         Space Freeing Up         Delete Backup Data         Derrypt Backup Data             Image: Strate Strat	Click the drop-down butt	
Data Integrity Check     restorability       Space Freeing Up     All       Delete Backup Data     All       Decrypt Backup Data     Backup_1       Backup_2     Backup_2	Data Integrity Check   Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start Start		
Space Freeing Up     All     ✓       Delete Backup Data     All     ✓       Decrypt Backup Data     Backup_1       Backup_2     Backup_2	Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data Start		on to select a backup set.
Delete Backup Data           All           Backup_1           Backup_2	Delete Backup Data   Decrypt Backup Data   Stat	Utilities	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and
Delete Backup Data Backup_1 Backup_2 Backup_2	Backup_1 Backup_2 Start	Utilities Data Integrity Check	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set
	Start	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All
		Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All All
		Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All All Backup_1 Backup_2
		Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2
	Close He	Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	on to select a backup set. Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set All Backup_1 Backup_2

1.



<ol> <li>Click the drop-dov</li> <li>B247PRO</li> </ol>	wn button to select a backup destination.	- 0 ×
Utilities	Data Integrity Check	- 1 /
Data Integrity Check	Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set	
Space Freeing Up	Data-Backupset 1 Select a destination	~
Delete Backup Data	All All	~
Decrypt Backup Data	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	
	Start	
		Close Help

4. Unchecked Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) and Rebuild index options is the default setting of Data Integrity Check.

B24/PRO				~
Utilities	Data Integrity Check			
Data Integrity Check	Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set			
Space Freeing Up	Data-Backupset 1 Select a destination		•	
Delete Backup Data	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans		•	
Decrypt Backup Data	Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check     Rebuild index  Start			
		lose	Help	

#### Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

When this option is enabled, the DIC will perform check on the integrity of the files on the backup destination(s) against the checksum file generated at the time of the backup job.

If there is a discrepancy, this indicates that the files on the backup destination(s) are corrupted and will be removed from the backup destination(s). If these files still exist on the client machine on the next backup job, the Advanced Client (B247PRO) will upload the latest copy of the files.



However, if the corrupted files are in the Retention Area, they will not be backed up again as the source file has already been deleted from the client machine.

The time required to complete a data integrity check depends on the number of factors such as:

- number of files and/or folders in the backup set(s)
- bandwidth available on the client computer
- hardware specifications of the client computer such as, the disk I/O and CPU performance

#### NOTES

- 1. For user(s) with metered internet connection, additional data charges may be incurred if the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) is enabled. As CRC data involves downloading the data from the backup destination(s) to the client machine to perform this check.
- To find out how much data is downloaded from the backup destination(s) for the CRC check, please refer the value for Utilities in the <u>Data Transfer</u> <u>statistics</u> in Chapter 10.6.3.

#### Rebuild index

5.

When this option is enabled, the Data Integrity Check will start rebuilding corrupted index and/or broken data blocks if there are any.

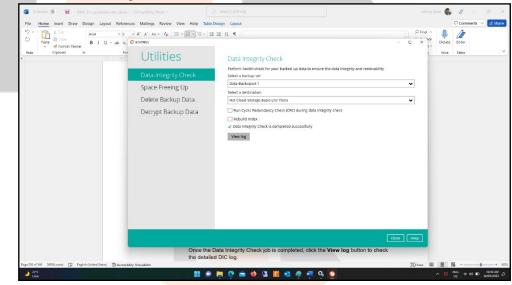
Click the **Start** button to begin the Data Integrity Check.



# 6. The Data Integrity Check will start running on the selected backup set(s) and backup destination(s).

) 8247PRO		-		
Utilities	Data Integrity Check			
Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	Data Integrity Check Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set Data-Backupset 1 Select a destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Num Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check Rebuild index * Processing Job "Current"." View log		<b>&gt;</b>	
		Close	Не	lp

Once the Data Integrity Check job is completed, click the **View log** button to check the detailed DIC log.





The detailed log of Data Integrity Check process will be displayed.

og	14/03/2022 00:40 🖌	Show All	~
Туре		Time	
Q	Start [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]	14/03/2022 0	
0	Start data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, rebuil	14/03/2022 0	
0	Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"	14/03/2022 0	
Q	Download valid index files from backup job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index".	14/03/2022 0	
0	Vacuuming index	14/03/2022 0	
0	Vacuuming index Completed	14/03/2022 0	
0	Existing statistics of backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data area u		
0	Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data a	14/03/2022 0	
0	The statistics of backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is correct.	14/03/2022 0	
0	Saving the integrity check result.	14/03/2022 0	
0	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-14-00-40-17 at destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	14/03/2022 (	
0	Data integrity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is completed	14/03/2022 (	
0	-Finished data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, reb		00:40:26
0	Completed data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled,	14/03/2022 (	00:40:26

The following options can be used for further viewing of the detailed DIC log:

- Log filter
- Show filter
- Logs per page

l Itilities		
	а – Г	
Log 14/03/2022 00:40 ¥		Show All
Туре	Log	Time
Start [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]		14/03/2022 00:40:17
	on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, rebuil	. 14/03/2022 00:40:17
Start processing data inte	grity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"	14/03/2022 00:40:17
	from backup job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index".	14/03/2022 00:40:21
Vacuuming index		14/03/2022 00:40:21
Vacuuming index Compl		14/03/2022 00:40:21
	ip set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data area u	
	backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data a	
	et= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is correct.	14/03/2022 00:40:22
Saving the integrity check		14/03/2022 00:40:22
	file index to 1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-14-00-40-17 at destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	14/03/2022 00:40:23
	ackup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is completed	14/03/2022 00:40:26
	eck on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, reb.	
Completed data integrity	check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled,	14/03/2022 00:40:26



Option	Screenshot	Function
Log Filter	Log       01/21/2020 16:23         Type       10/02/2019 16:34         1       10/02/2019 16:56         1       10/02/2019 15:50         1       01/18/2020 17:27         1       01/21/2020 13:07         1       01/21/2020 13:08         1       01/21/2020 16:23	This option is used to display the available logs of the Data Integrity Check jobs.
Show filter	2 Show All ✓ All 01/ 01/ Information 01/ Warning 01/ 01/ Error	This option is used to sort the Data Integrity Check log by its status (i.e., All, Information, Warning, and Error).
Logs per page	Logs per page 50 50 100 200 500 1000	This option allows user to choose the displayed number of logs per page.
Page	Page 1/3 ↓ 1/3 2/3 3/3	This option allows user to navigate the logs to the next page(s).



### Data Integrity Check Result

There are two possible outcomes after the completion of a Data Integrity Check:

- Data Integrity Check is completed successfully with no data corruption or index-related issues detected;
- Corrupted data (e.g., index files, checksum files and/or broken data blocks) has been detected

The screenshot below shows an example of a data integrity check log with NO data corruption or index-related issues detected.

St     St	Log tart [B247PR0 v9.1.0.0] tart [B247PR0 v9.1.0.0] tart data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, rebuil tart processing data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1" destination" "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" wonhoad valid line & files from backup job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C.\Users\Backuttemp\1646398208096)Predefined@-1635843864160\index". 'acuuming index Completed xisting statistics of backup set "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" backupset '' acuuming index Completed xisting statistics of backup set "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data area u	Time 14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:2 14/03/2022 00:40:2
St     St	tant data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 11646338208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lte Plans;1635843864160)", crc disabled, rebuil tant processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lte Plans" ownload valid inder files from backup Job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C:\Users\Backuttemp11646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index". accuming index ComplexCompleted	14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:2 14/03/2022 00:40:2
St     D     C     V     C     V     C     V     C     V     C     V     C    C	tart processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" Jownbad valid index files from backup job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C:\Users\Backultemp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index". Jacuming index acuuming index Completed	14/03/2022 00:40:1 14/03/2022 00:40:2 14/03/2022 00:40:2
Du     Va     Re     Th	Jownload valid index files from backup job "2022-03-13-18-31-23" to "C\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864160\index". acuuming index. acuuming index Completed	14/03/2022 00:40:2 14/03/2022 00:40:2
<ul> <li>Va</li> <li>V</li></ul>	acuuming index acuuming index Completed	14/03/2022 00:40:2
<ul> <li>Va</li> <li>E&gt;</li> <li>Re</li> <li>Th</li> </ul>	/acuuming index Completed	
<ul> <li>Example</li> <li>Re</li> <li>Th</li> </ul>		
C Re	visting statistics of backup sets "Data-Backupset 1" destinations "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180 2MB. Data area u	14/03/2022 00:40:2
Ŭ Tł		
	lecalculated statistics of backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans": Data area compressed size: 180.2MB, Data a	
	he statistics of backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is correct.	14/03/2022 00:40:2
	aving the integrity check result.	14/03/2022 00:40:2
	aving encrypted backup file index to 1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-14-00-40-17 at destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	14/03/2022 00:40:2
	Data integrity check on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans" is completed	14/03/2022 00:40:2
	inished data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled, reb	
C C	completed data integrity check on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)", crc disabled,	14/03/2022 00:40:2

If any index-related error(s) or data corrupted item(s) is found, the **(TEST MODE)** confirmation screen will be displayed.

Utilities					
Data Integrity Check	Perform health restorability	check for your l	backed up data t	o ensure the data	integrity and
The result of data integ corrupted items, checks you sure you want to cor					
Backup set: Backup_1 Destination	Items found in	Data corrupted	Index broken	Statistics	
"Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans"	index 11 (45.7MB)	items 6 (45.7MB)	data blocks 2 (26.6KB)	Incorrect	
* File count (File size)				Yes	No View log



This is to inform the user of the following details:

- Backup set that contains an error
- Backup Destination
- Items found in index
- Data corrupted items
- Index broken data blocks
- Statistics (i.e., Correct or Incorrect)

### **Test Mode confirmation**

The (TEST MODE) confirmation screen will ONLY appear if either of the **criteria** below matches the backup data during the data integrity check process:

- deleted number of backup files is over 1,000
- deleted number of backup file size is over 512 MB (in total)
- deleted number of backup files is over 10% of the total backup files

Otherwise, the Data Integrity Check job will automatically take corrective actions.

There are three (3) options on the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen:

	Option	Screenshot	Function
Yes	s	Yes	Corrupted data (e.g. index files, checksum files and/or broken data blocks) will be deleted and storage statistics will be updated.
No		Νο	No action(s) will be taken and a message will prompt.
Vie	ew log	View log	The detailed log of the Data Integrity Check process will be displayed.



### Clicking **No** will display the following screen:

Utilities	Data Integrity Check	
Data Integrity Check	Perform health check for your backed up data to ensure the data integrity and restorability Select a backup set	
Space Freeing Up	All	
Delete Backup Data	Run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity check	
updated. You are recommende	was completed in TEST MODE only. NO changes have been ed to continue in order to delete data corrupted items, checksum broken data blocks and rebuild the index. t to exit? Exit Back	
	Close Help	

If the **Exit** button is clicked, the data integrity check result will be discarded.

If the **Back** button is clicked, it will go back to the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen.

#### NOTES

- It is strongly recommended to apply corrective actions when the (TEST MODE) confirmation screen pops up (clicking the Yes button). This is to ensure that the remaining corrupted file(s) will be removed from the backup destination(s), therefore on the next backup job, these files are backed up again if they are still present on the client machine. However, if the corrupted files are in Retention Area, then they will not be backed up again as the source file has already been deleted from the client machine.
- If the DIC detects data blocks (.bak files) in the backup destination(s) that do not have related index entries, then these physical data blocks will be **automatically** removed from the backup destination(s) without the (TEST MODE) prompt.

Aside from viewing the Data Integrity Check logs directly on Advanced Client (B247PRO) client, they can also be viewed on the file system of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) client machine. For Advanced Client (B247PRO) on Windows, the DIC logs are in the following directory:

#### %UserProfile%\pro\system\IntegrityCheck

🕯 l ⊋ 🕼 🗢 l			IntegrityCh	leck	
File Home Share	View				
Navigation pane •		Large icons Conservation Conser	Ad	oup by 🕶 Id columns 👻 re all columns to fit	Item check boxes         File name extensions         Hidden items
Panes	Lay	/out	Curr	ent view	Show/hid
⋲ 🍥 👻 🕈 퉬 🕨 Thi	s PC 🔸 Local Disk (C:)	▶ Users ▶ Administ	rator 🕨 .obm 🕨	system 🕨 Integrit	yCheck v Ċ
Name	Date modified	Туре	Size		
2019-10-02-15-35-10	10/2/2019 3:35 PM	Text Document	2 KB		
2019-10-02-15-36-16	10/2/2019 3:53 PM	Text Document	2 KB		
2019-10-02-15-58-21	10/2/2019 3:58 PM	Text Document	2 KB		



### 10.9.2 Space Freeing Up

This feature is used to remove obsolete file(s) from your backup set and destination (manually start Retention Policy). After the Space Freeing Up job is completed, the storage statistics of the backup set(s) are updated.

To perform Space Freeing Up, follow the instructions below:

1. Select a backup set from the drop-down list.

Utilities	Free Up Storage Space
Data Integrity Check	To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
Delete Backup Data Decrypt Backup Data	All
	Close Help

If you select a specific backup set, then you will also have to select a specific destination or all destinations.

O B247PRO	- 0	×
Utilities	Free Up Storage Space	
Data Integrity Check	To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set	
Space Freeing Up	Data-Backupset 1	
Delete Backup Data	Select a destination	
Decrypt Backup Data	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	
Decrypt backup bata	All Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	
	Close Hel	р



Utilities	Free Up Storage Space
	To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention
Data Integrity Check	policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
Delete Backup Data	Start
Decrypt Backup Data	
	Close
ick the <b>St<mark>art</mark> button to per</b>	
	form space free up.
ick the <b>Start</b> button to per Utilities	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space
	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention
Utilities	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set
Utilities Data Integrity Check	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All
Utilities Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	form space free up. Free Up Storage Space To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start. Select a backup set All

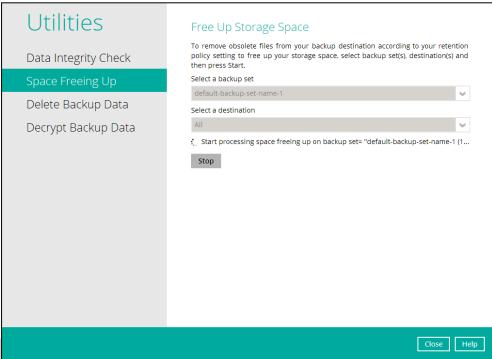
#### 14 . . . . .



Close Help



3. Space freeing job will start running on the selected backup set(s) and backup destination(s).



 The status will be shown once completed. Click the View log button to see the detailed report of the space freeing up job.

Utilities	Free Up Storage Space
Data Integrity Check	To remove obsolete files from your backup destination according to your retention policy setting to free up your storage space, select backup set(s), destination(s) and then press Start.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
Delete Backup Data	default-backup-set-name-1
	Select a destination
Decrypt Backup Data	All
	<ul> <li>Space freeing up is completed successfully</li> </ul>
	View log
	Close Help



Log	14/03/2022 01:00 V		Show All	
Туре	: Log Start [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]		Time	
0	Start [ B24/PRO v9.1.0.0 ] Start space freeing up on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)"		14/03/2022	
ŏ	Start space freeing up on backup set. Data-backupset (1040590200090), Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1053045004100) Start processing space freeing up on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1 (1646398208096)" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	e/16250/206/16		
ŏ	Download valid index files from backup job "2022-03-14-00-40-17" to "C:\Users\Backu\temp\1646398208096\Predefined@-1635843864		14/03/2022	
ŏ	Saving encrypted backup file index to 1646398208096/blocks/2022-03-14-01-00-38 at destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	TOO MIDDLY .	14/03/2022	
ŏ	Space freeing up on backup set= "Data-Backupset 1 (1646398208096)" destination= "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans (-16358438641	60)" is completed	14/03/2022	
ŏ	Finished space freeing up on backup set "Data-Backupset 1(1646398208096)", "Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans(-1635843864160)"		14/03/2022	

### 10.9.3 Delete Backup Data

This feature is used to permanently delete backed up data from a backup set(s), destination(s), backup job, or delete all backed-up data. After the data is deleted, the storage statistics of the backup set(s) are updated.

To perform deletion of backup data, follow the instructions below:

1. Select a backup set from the drop-down list.

Utilities	Delete Backup Data
Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up	Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward. Select a backup set
Delete Backup Data	All
Decrypt Backup Data	All Sample Backup Set 02 Sample Backup Set 01
	Close Help

**NOTE**: This will only delete the backed-up files in a backup set(s) and destination(s), but the backup set and destination will remain.

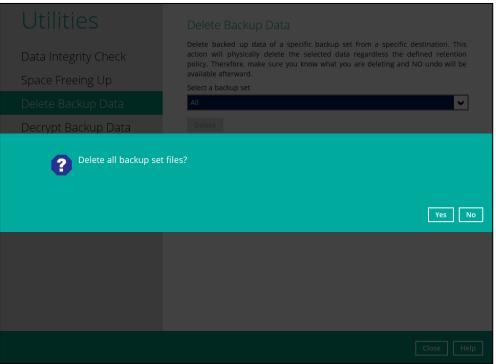
If you select a specific backup set, then you will also have to select a specific destination or all destinations.



Delete Backup Data Delete Backup Data Delete Backup Data Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically dele he selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you a leleting and NO undo will be available afterward. Select a backup set Data-Backupset 1 Select a destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Select what to delete Delete all backed up data
Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delet he selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you a deleting and NO undo will be available afterward. Select a backup set Data-Backupset 1 Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Select what to delete
leleting and NO undo will be available afterward. select a backup set Data-Backupset 1  Interpretation  Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Select what to delete
Data-Backupset 1   select a destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans  select what to delete
elect a destination Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans elect what to delete
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans
jelect what to delete
Delete
Close
then there is no need to select a destination.
Delete Backup Data
Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention
policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be
available afterward.
Select a backup set
All
Delete
Delete



 If you choose to delete All backup set(s), the following message will be displayed. By clicking Yes, all backed up files from the selected backup set(s) and destination(s) will be deleted.



If you select a specific backup set, you will have an option to choose a destination.

O B247PRO	>
Utilities	Delete Backup Data
Data Integrity Check	Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
	Data-Backupset 1
Delete Backup Data	Select a destination
Decrypt Backup Data	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans
	Select what to delete Delete all backed up data  Delete
	Close Help

If you select a specific destination, there are two (2) available options for the type of files you wish to delete.

- Delete all backed-up data
- Choose from ALL files



#### Delete all backed-up data

If you choose this option, the following message will be displayed. By clicking **Yes**, all backed up data from the selected backup set(s) and destination(s) will be deleted.

Utilities	
Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up	Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.
Space freeing op	Select a backup set
	Sample Backup Set 01
Decrypt Backup Data	Select a destination
Pelete all files (Samp	Yes No

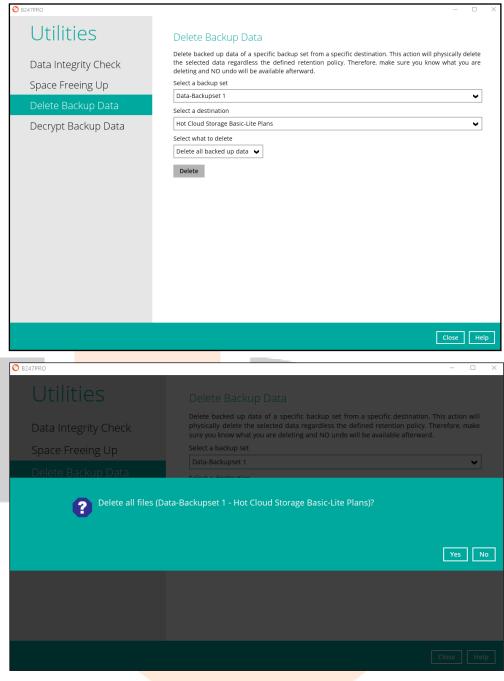
#### Choose from ALL files

If you choose this option, you can select to delete any file(s) in the backup set.

0 B247PRO	- O X
Utilities	Delete Backup Data
Data Integrity Check	Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.
	Select a backup set
Space Freeing Up	Data-Backupset 1
Delete Backup Data	Select a destination
	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans
Decrypt Backup Data	Select what to delete Choose from ALL files
	Folders     Name     Size     Date modified       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size       Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Size     Image: Siz
	Search Items per page 50 V Page 1/1 V Restore Linked Data Delete
	Close Help



3.	Click the	Delete button,	then click	Yes to start th	e deletion of files.
----	-----------	----------------	------------	-----------------	----------------------





#### 4. Files are successfully deleted.

O B247PRO	- D X
Utilities	Delete Backup Data
Data Integrity Check	Delete backed up data of a specific backup set from a specific destination. This action will physically delete the selected data regardless the defined retention policy. Therefore, make sure you know what you are deleting and NO undo will be available afterward.
Space Freeing Up	Select a backup set
	Data-Backupset 1
Delete Backup Data	Select a destination
Decrypt Backup Data	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans
	Select what to delete
	Delete all backed up data 🖌
	✓ Files deleted successfully
	Close Help

## 10.9.4 Decrypt Backup Data

212

This feature is used to restore raw data by using the data encryption key that was set for the backup set.

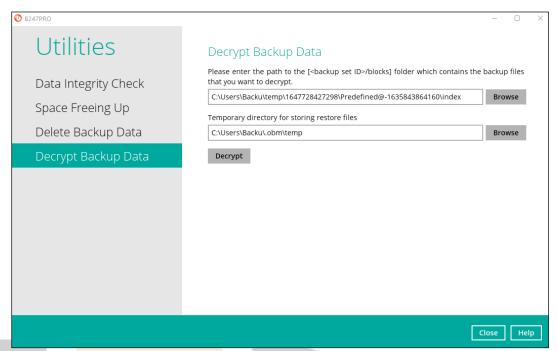
To perform decryption of backup data, follow the instructions below:

1. Click the **Browse** button to locate the path of the backup set ID / blocks folder.

0 B247PRO	- D X
Utilities	Decrypt Backup Data
Data Integrity Check Space Freeing Up Delete Backup Data	Please enter the path to the [ backup set ID>/blocks] folder which contains the backup files that you want to decrypt.BrowseTemporary directory for storing restore filesC:\Users\Backu\.obm\tempBrowse
Decrypt Backup Data	Decrypt
	Close Help



2. Click the **Browse** button to re-select the temporary folder for the decrypt process. Then click the **Decrypt** button to begin.



3. Select files to be decrypted.

Select Your Files To Be Restored
Select what to restore Choose from files as of job  20/03/2022 Latest Show filter
Folders     Name     Size     Date modified       □     ➡     ➡     □     ➡     □       □     ➡     □     ■     □     ■       □     ♥     ■     R:\     ■     ■       □     ♥     ■     R:\     ■       □     ♥     ■     R:\     ■       □     ♥     ■     R:\     ■       □     ♥     ■     Name     Size     Date modified
Search Items per page 50 V Page 1/1 V



4. Choose the location where the decrypted files will be restored to.

Original location	
Alternate location C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop     This share requires access credentials Show advanced option	Browse
	Previous Next Cancel
I be shown once completed.	
Restore	
backup-set-name-2	
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans         ✓ Restore Completed Successfully         Estimated time left       0 sec         Restored       1.34GB (13.220 files)         Elapsed time       1 min 51 sec         Transfer rate       19.47Mbit/s	<u>م</u>
	Show advanced option I be shown once completed. Bestore completed Compl

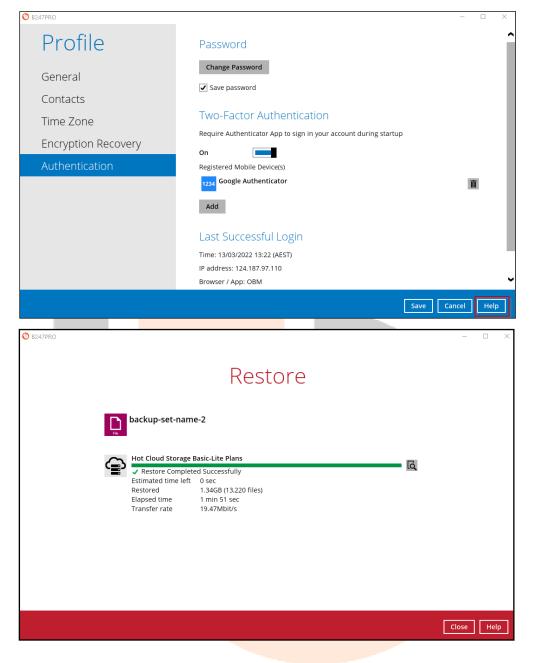
247

Close Help



## 10.10 Online Help

This allows the user to view the summary of information and instructions of each available features in Advanced Client (B247PRO).





## 10.11 System Tray

If Advanced Client (B247PRO) is installed on the computer, you will see an Advanced Client (B247PRO) icon in the taskbar at the lower right corner of the screen.



When you right-click the Advanced Client (B247PRO) icon, a control menu will pop-up.

		Open
		Backup >
		Backup and Logoff >
		Backup and Restart >
		Backup and Shutdown >
		Backup and Standby >
		Backup and Hibernate >
_		Help
Ŀ	L 🔽 💡	Stop Running Backup >
•	I 🛛 🕻	Exit
Back	up247 OBM s	y <mark>stem tray has ten (10) c</mark> ontrols:
0	Open	
0	Backup	
0	Backup and	Logoff



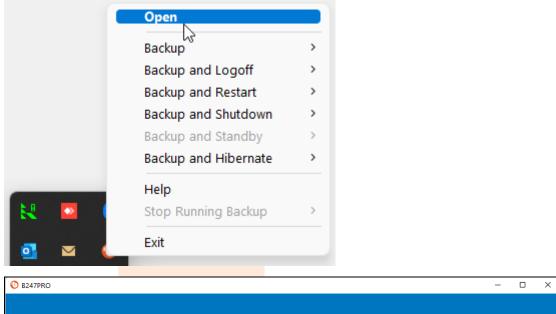
- Baokap and Eogon

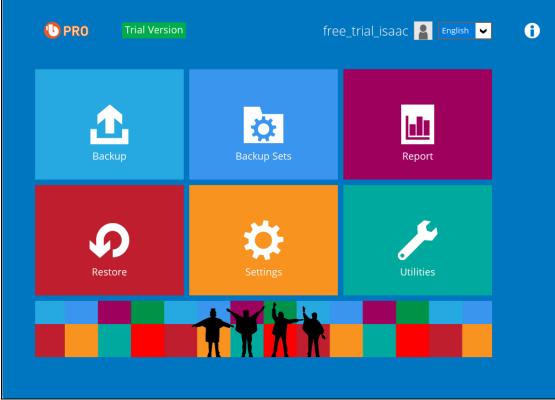
- Backup and Restart
- Backup and Shutdown
- Backup and Standby
- Backup and Hibernate
- Help
- Stop Running Backup
- O Exit



## Open

Select this option to open the Advanced Client (B247PRO) login screen.

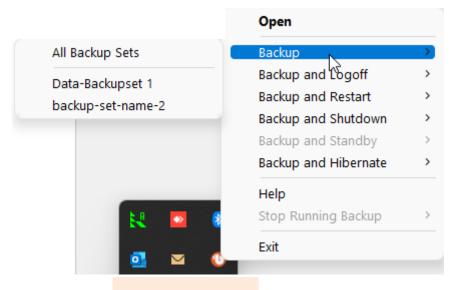




## Backup



If you want to perform a backup without going to the interface, hover the mouse to this option and select the backup set you want to back up.



### Backup and Logoff

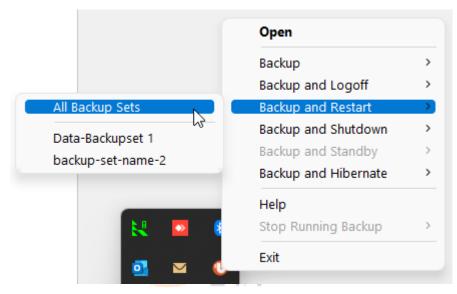
Select this option if you want to logoff Windows after a manual backup job is done.

Open Backup > All Backup Sets Backup and Logoff Backup and Restart > Data-Backupset 1 Backup and Shutdown > backup-set-name-2 Backup and Standby 5 Backup and Hibernate > Help Stop Running Backup 5 Exit  $\sim$ 

#### **Backup and Restart**

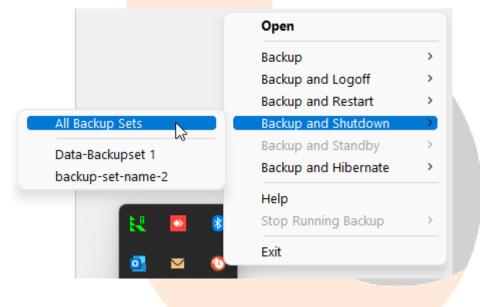


Choose this option if you want the machine to restart after a manual backup job is done.



### Backup and Shutdown

Choose this option if you want the machine to shut down after a manual backup job is done.



## **Backup and Standby**



Choose this option if you want the machine to go on standby after a manual backup job is done.

	Open	
	Backup	>
	Backup and Logoff	>
	Backup and Restart	>
	Backup and Shutdown	>
	Backup and Standby	>
	Backup and Hibernate	>
	Help	
K 🛛 🛛	Stop Running Backup	>
	Exit	
ol 🖂 🕐		

### Backup and Hibernate

Choose this option if you want the machine to hibernate after a manual backup job is done. This will be disabled if hibernate mode is not available on the Windows version you are using.

	Open	
	Backup	3
	Backup and Logoff	3
	Backup and Restart	3
	Backup and Shutdown	3
	Backup and Standby	2
All Backup Sets	Backup and Hibernate	
Data-Backupset 1	Help	
backup-set-name-2	Stop Running Backup	3
	Exit	

### Help

This tab will show you the function of each backup option.

	Open	Help		×
	Backup Backup and Logoff Backup and Restart Backup and Standby Backup and Standby Backup and Hibernate	> > > > >	Backup - Backup Now Backup and Logoff - Backup and then Logoff Windows Backup and Restart - Backup and then Restart Computer Backup and Shutdown - Backup and then Shutdown Computer Backup and Standby - Backup and then Stand By Computer Backup and Hibernate - Backup and then Hibernate Computer	
ol 🛛 🖸	Exit		ОК	

X



## **Stop Running Backup**

Use this option if you wish to stop a running manual, continuous or scheduled backup.

		Open	
		Backup	>
		Backup and Logoff	>
		Backup and Restart	>
		Backup and Shutdown	>
		Backup and Standby	>
		Backup and Hibernate	>
	_	Help	
R	•	Stop Running Backup	No >
		Exit	0
•			

This option will be disabled if there is no backup job running.

## Exit

Select this option if you want to close the application including the Advanced Client (B247PRO) icon at the taskbar.

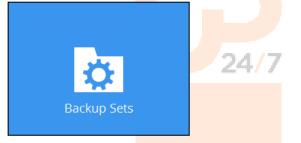
	Open		
	Backup	>	
	Backup and Logoff	>	
	Backup and Restart	>	
	Backup and Shutdown	>	
	Backup and Standby	>	
	Backup and Hibernate	>	
	Help		
N 🛛 🛚	Stop Running Backup	>	
	Exit		
o 🖸 🖸	15		



# **11 Create a Backup Set**

The network drive support allows users to access different network drives not limited to Windows-based backup source. The following are supported:

- Network drives with different login credentials instead of limited to Windows User Authentication login or network drives without login credentials.
- Network drives without the need for them to be set up first on Windows.
- Network drives as Backup Source (including filter), Backup Destination and Restore Location (Original or Alternate).
- 1. Network Click the Backup Sets icon on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) main interface.



2. Create a new backup set by clicking the "+" icon next to Add new backup set.

	Backup Sets	
222		Sort by
		Creation Time 🖌
	Add new backup set	

3. When the Create Backup Set window appears, name your new backup set, and select the **Backup set type**. Then, click **Next** to proceed.

(	Create Ba	ackup Set	
Name File Backup			
Backup set type			
File Backup	~		



a. In the Backup Source window, select the files and folders for backup. Click **I would like** to choose the files to backup to select individual files for backup.

	Backup Source
Sel	lect the files and folders that you want to backup         Desktop         My Documents         Favorites         Outlook         Windows Live Mail
Ap Ofi	Iter ply filters to the backup source f yould like to choose the files to backup
	Previous Next Cancel Help

- In the Advanced Backup Source window, there are three (3) ways to select file(s) and/or folder(s) for back up:
  - i. Select folder(s) to back up all files in the folder(s). Click **OK** to save the selection and close the Advanced Backup Source window.



Back up only individual file(s) instead of all files in the selected folder(s). Check the Show files checkbox at the bottom of the screen. A list of files will appear on the right-hand side. Select the checkbox(es) next to the file(s) to back up. Then, click OK to save your selections and close the Advanced Backup Source window.

B247PRO		– 🗆 🗙
► B247PRO Advanced Backup Source Folders	Name Size Date modified acl addins appcompat apppatch AppReadiness	×
BIOS BIOS DeneDriveTemp DeneDriveTemp DeneDriveTemp DeneDriveTemp DeneDriveTemp DeneTripos Program Files DeneTripos Program Dias DeneTripos	Image: Second	
Show files	Items per page 50 V Page 1/3 V	
Add network address	ОКСа	ncel Help

iii. Back up file(s) and/or folder(s) located in a network drive. Click the **Add network address** link at the botton of the screen. In the Network Address window, enter the network address.



Once a network address is entered, **This share requires access credentials** will be enabled. Check the box beside it if access credentials are required to backup and enter the User name and Password. Otherwise leave it unchecked and click **OK**.



••••	
Password	
username	
User name (e.g. domain\username)	
<ul> <li>This share requires access credentials</li> </ul>	

The network drive will now be added and automatically selected. There is also an option to select only specific file(s) to back up by checking the **Show files** checkbox. Click **OK** to save your selections and close the Advanced Backup Source window.

- 5. In the Backup Source window, click Next to proceed.
- 6. When the **Schedule** window appears, you can configure a backup schedule to automatically run a backup job at your specified time interval. In the Schedule window, the Run scheduled backup for this backup set is **On** by default.
  - In the default backup schedule, there will be a scheduled backup that will be performed daily at 8pm. You can leave it as is or you can modify it by clicking on the existing backup schedule.



Schedule
Run scheduled backup for this backup set On
Existing schedules           Backup Schedule
Backup Schedule Daily (Everyday at 20:00) Add

If you want to add another schedule, click the **Add** button. When the New Backup Schedule window appears, specify your backup schedule. Then, click **OK** to save your changes and close the New Backup Schedule window.

Name			
Daily-1			
Туре			
Daily 🖌			
Start backup			
at 🗸 13 🗸 :	: 00 🖌		
Stop			
until full backup con	npleted 🖌		
Run Retention Pol	icy after backup		

- 7. In case you have added a schedule, it will be shown in the Schedule window. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done setting.
  - a. The **Destination** window will appear.

Destination	
Backup mode	
Existing storage destinations	
+ Add new storage destination / destination pool	

Select the appropriate option from the **Backup mode** dropdown menu.

- > Sequential (default value) run backup jobs to each backup destination one by one
- > Concurrent run backup jobs to all backup destinations at the same time



To select a backup destination for the backup data storage, click + next to Add new storage destination / destination pool.

8. In the **New Storage Destination / Destination Pool** window, select the destination storage. Then, click **OK** to confirm your selection.

🕑 B247PRO		_		$\times$
	New Storage Destination / Destination Pool			
	Name			
	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans			
	Destination storage			
	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans			
	Access the Internet through proxy			
	ОК	ancel	Hel	р

If Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive is selected, you need to specify the path by clicking Change to select the path or you can manually enter it. Once a network address is entered, This share requires access credentials check box will be enabled. Check the box beside it if access credentials are required to connect to the storage destination and enter the User name and Password. Otherwise, leave it unchecked and click Test to check the connection. Click OK to add the storage destination.



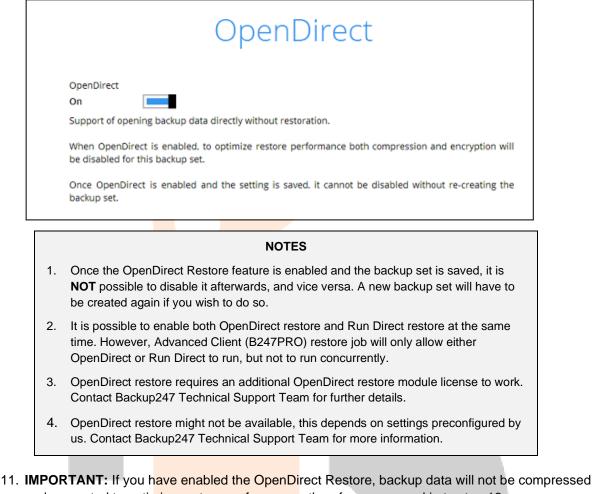
New Storage Destination / Destination	n Pool
Name	
Local-1	
Destination storage	
Local / Mapped Drive / Network Drive / Removable Drive	ve 🗸
Path (Input local / network address or click [Change])	
\\125. Share	Change
This share requires access credentials	
User name (e.g. domain\username)	
username	
Password	I
•••••	
	1
Test	

9. In the **Destination** window, your selected storage destination will be shown. Click **Next** to proceed.

	Destination	
Backup mode		
Existing storage destine Hot Cloud Stor	nations age Basic-Lite Plans	
Local-1 C:\OneDriveTen		
$\sim$		



10. If you wish to enable the **OpenDirect Restore** feature, make sure you turn on the OpenDirect restore switch in this menu. Click **Next** to proceed.



and encrypted to optimize restore performance, therefore you can skip to step 16. In the Encryption window, the default **Encrypt Backup Data** option is enabled with an

In the Encryption window, the default **Encrypt Backup Data** option is enabled with an encryption key preset by the system which provides the most secure protection.

	Encryption
Encrypt Backup Data On	
Encryption Type	
Default  Default	
User password	
Custom	

You can choose from one of the following three Encryption Type options:

Default – an encryption key with 44 alphanumeric characters will be randomly generated by the system



- User password the encryption key will be the same as the login password of your Advanced Client (B247PRO) at the time when this backup set is created. Please be reminded that if you change the Advanced Client (B247PRO) login password later, the encryption keys of the backup sets previously created with this encryption type will remain unchanged.
- Custom you can customize your encryption key, where you can set your own algorithm, encryption key, method, and key length.

Encryption	
Encrypt Backup Data On Concerned Con	
****	
Re-enter encryption key	
*****	
Method ECB CBC Key length	
○ 128-bit	

Click **Next** when you are done with the settings.

12. If you have enabled the Encryption Key feature in the previous step, the following pop-up window will be displayed regardless of the selected encryption type.

Encryption	
Encrypt Backup Data On Encryption Type Default	
You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files la Please confirm that you have done so.	
Onmask encryption key	
	Copy to clipboard Confirm

The pop-up window has the following three options to choose from:



Unmask encryption key – The encryption key is masked by default. Click this option to show the encryption key.

You are advised to write this encryption key down on paper and keep it in a safe place. You will need it when you need to restore your files later. Please confirm that you have done so.		
rcX1MBE4brnZO86eKOp6FeabuuRRi3qDXG9q5uBxF0s=		
Mask encryption key		
Ε	Copy to clipboard	Confirm

- Copy to clipboard Click to copy the encryption key, then you can paste it in another location of your choice.
- > **Confirm** Click to exit this pop-up window and proceed to the next step.
- 13. The following screen prompts you to enter the Windows login credentials for user authentication if you have enabled the Schedule Backup feature in step 8.

VVII	ndows	s Usei	r Aut	henti	cation	
Domain Name	(e.g Ahsay.com) /	Host Name				
example.com						
User name						
username						
Password						
•••••						

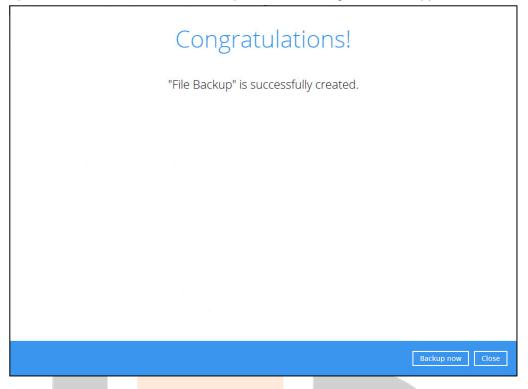
#### NOTE

If you have selected to back up individual file(s) and/or folder(s) on your local computer's drive in step 5, the Windows User Authentication request will be bypassed and therefore the screen shown above will not display even though the Schedule Backup feature has been turned on.

It is recommended to enter the information of user with Administrator privilege to support backup of network drives.



14. Upon successful creation of the backup set, the following screen will appear. You can click



2 15. Based on **Best Practices and Recommendations**, it is highly recommended to change the **Temporary Directory**. Select another location with sufficient free disk space other than C:\ drive.

Go to **Others > Temporary Directory**. Click **Change** to browse for another location.

File Backup	Temporary Directory
General Source Backup Schedule Continuous Backup Destination	Temporary directory for storing backup files          E:\Users\Administrator\temp       Change         16.01GB free out of total 39.66GB space in E:       Remove temporary files after backup         Follow Link       Follow link of the backup files         On       Image
Deduplication Retention Policy Command Line Tool Reminder Bandwidth Control	Volume Shadow Copy         Enable Windows' Volume Shadow Copy for open file backup         On         File Permissions         Backup files' permissions         On
Others Hide advanced settings	OpenDirect Support of opening backup data directly without restoration
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help

16. Optional: Select your preferred **Compression** type. For newly created backup set(s), "No Compression" is selected by default.



Go to **Others > Compressions**, then select from the following:

- No Compression
- Normal
- Fast (Compressed size larger than normal)
- Fast with optimization for local

Destination Deduplication Retention Policy Command Line Tool Reminder Bandwidth Control Others Hide advanced settings	ssion type
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help



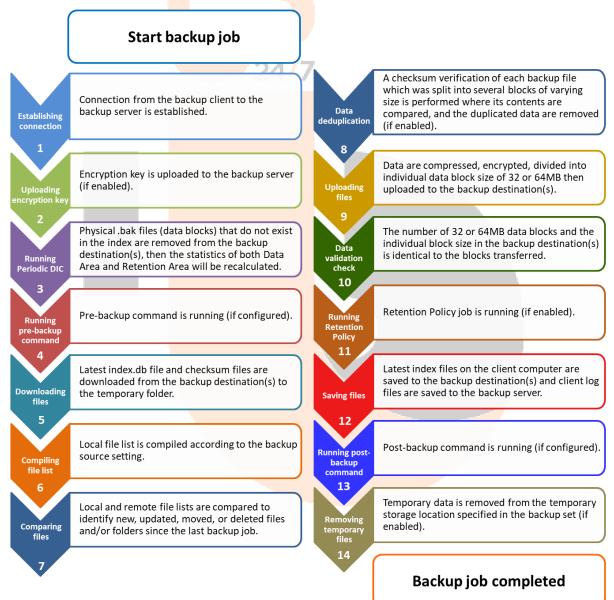




# **12 Overview on the Backup Process**

The following steps are performed during a backup job. For an overview of the detailed process for Steps **3**, **5**, **10**, and **12**, please refer to the following chapters.

- Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) Process (Step 3)
- Backup Set Index Handling Process
  - Start Backup Job (Step 5)
  - Completed Backup Job (Step 12)
- Data Validation Check Process (Step 10)





## 12.1 Periodic Data Integrity Check (PDIC) Process

The PDIC will run on the first backup job that falls on the corresponding day of the week from **Monday to Friday**.

To minimize the impact of the potential load of large number of PDIC jobs running at the same time on the B247CBS server, the schedule of a PDIC job for each backup set is automatically determined by the result of the following formula:

PDIC schedule = %BackupSetID% modulo	5
or	
%BackupSetID% mod 5	

The calculated **result** will map to the corresponding day of the week (i.e., from Monday to Friday).

0	Monday	
1	Tuesday	
2	Wednesda <mark>y</mark>	2/17
3	Thursday	24//
4	Friday	

NOTE: The PDIC schedule cannot be changed.

Example:

Backup set ID: 1594627447932

Calculation: 1594627447932 mod 5 = 2

2	Wednesday

In this example:

- the PDIC will run on the first backup job that falls on Wednesday; or
- if there is no active backup job(s) running from Monday to Friday, then the PDIC will run on the next available backup job.

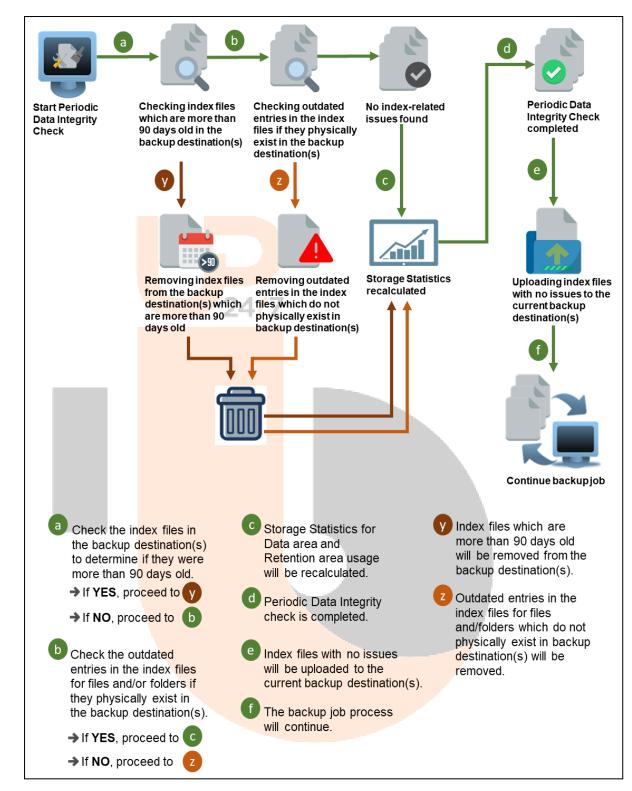
#### NOTES

Although according to the PDIC formula for determining the schedule is **%BackupSetID% mod 5**, this schedule only applies if the previous PDIC job was actually run more than 7 days prior.

Under certain conditions, the PDIC may not run strictly according to this formula. For example:

- 1. The PDIC job will run on the first backup job after upgrade to the latest client version from Advanced Client (B247PRO) v6, v7, or pre-8.3.6.0 version.
- If backup jobs for a backup set are not run on a regular daily backup schedule (for example: on a weekly or monthly schedule), then the PDIC job will run if it detects that the previous PDIC job was run more than 7 days ago.
- 3. Every time a data integrity check (DIC) is run, the latest PDIC run date is reset, the next PDIC job will run after 7 days.
- 4. The PDIC job will not run if there are no files in both the data and Retention Areas. For example: a newly created backup set with no backup job history or a backup set where all the data has been deleted using the <u>Delete Backup Data</u> feature.
- The PDIC job will not run on a backup set that contains any data which is still in v6 format. It will only run if all v6 data format on a backup set has undergone data migration to v9 block format.



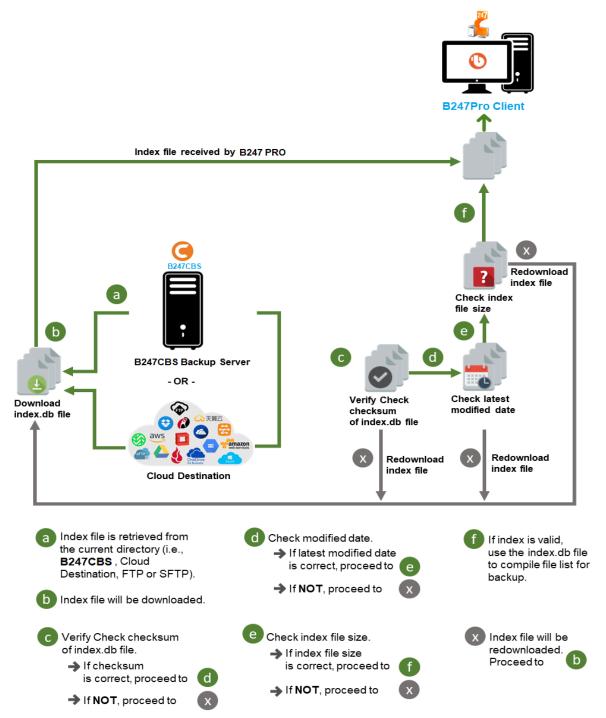




## 12.2 Backup Set Index Handling Process

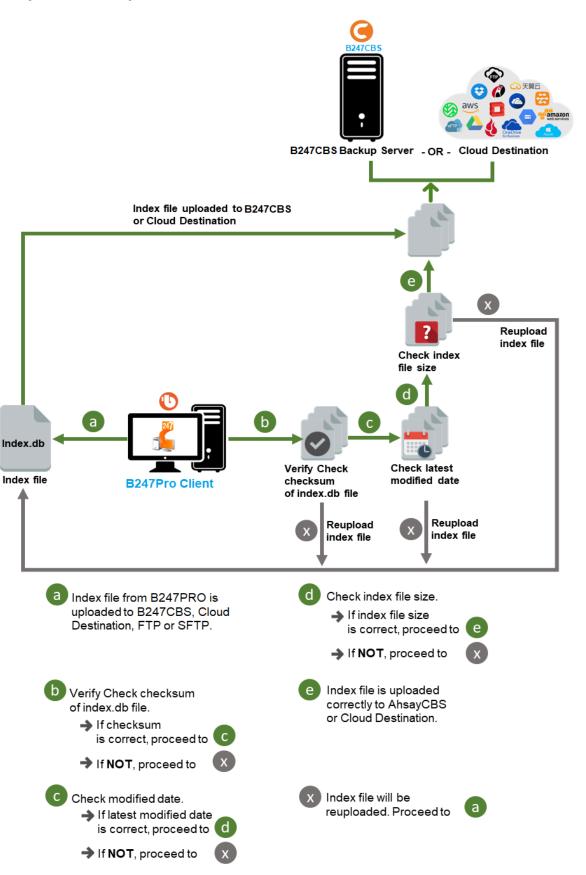
To minimize the possibility of index related issues affecting backups, each time index files are downloaded from and uploaded to backup destination(s); the file size, last modified date, and checksum is verified to ensure index file integrity.

### 12.2.1 Start Backup Job





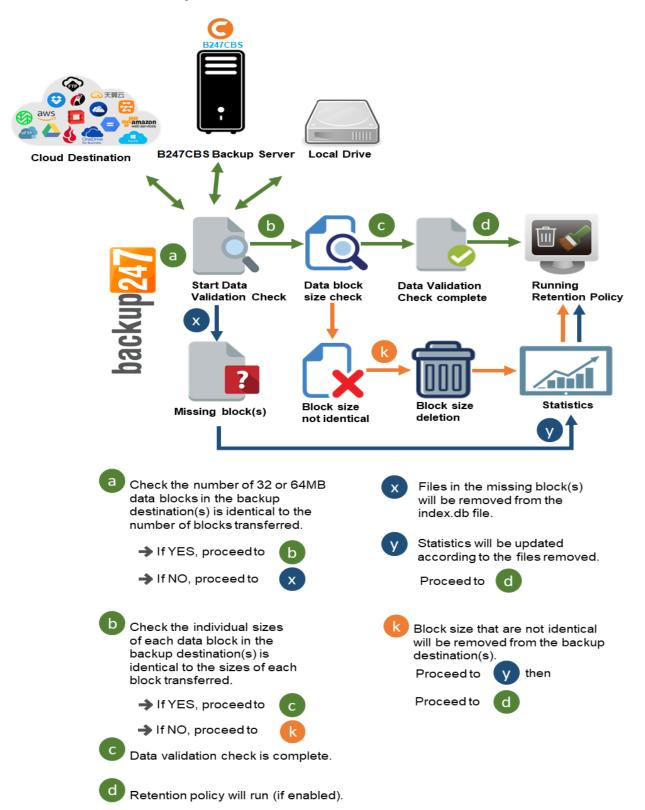
### 12.2.2 Completed Backup Job





## **12.3 Data Validation Check Process**

As an additional measure to ensure that all files transferred to the backup destination(s) are received and saved correctly, both the number of 32 or 64 MB data block files and the size of each block file are checked again after the files are transferred.





# 13 Run Backup Jobs

## 13.1 Login to Advanced Client (B247PRO)

Log in to the Advanced Client (B247PRO) application according to the instructions in <u>Chapter</u> <u>8 Logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO)</u>.

## 13.2 Start a Manual Backup

1. Click the **Backup** icon on the main interface of Advanced Client (B247PRO).



2. Select the backup set which you would like to start a backup for.

Please Se	elect The Backup Set To Backup	
File	<b>BackupSet-1</b> Owner: w8-pro Last Backup: Wednesday, November 03, 2021 17:15	
File	<b>Data Backup</b> Owner: w8-pro Last Backup: Wednesday, November 03, 2021 17:16	
File	BackupSet-3 Owner: w2k16-std Last Backup: Wednesday, November 03, 2021 17:16	
	Close	Help



٦

3. Click the **Show advanced option** in case you want to modify the Destinations, Migrate Data, and Retention Policy options.

Choose Your B	ackup Options
Data Backup	
Backup set type File Show advanced option	
	Previous Backup Cancel Help

4. When the advanced options are shown, it is recommended to enable **Run Retention Policy after backup**. This will help you save hard disk quota in the long run.

Choose Your	Backup Optio	ons
Data Backup		
Backup set type File Destinations ☑ G Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans		
Local-1 (C:\Backup Destination)      Migrate Data     Migrate existing data to latest version      Retention Policy     Run Retention Policy after backup		
Hide advanced option		
	Previous	Backup Cancel F

#### NOTE

When the **Migrate Data** option is enabled, the existing data will be migrated to the latest version during a backup job. This option is disabled by default. Backup job(s) for backup sets with Migrate Data enabled may take longer to finish. For more information about this feature, refer to <u>B247CBS v9 New Features Supplemental document</u>.



5. Once done with the settings, click the **Backup** button to start the backup job.

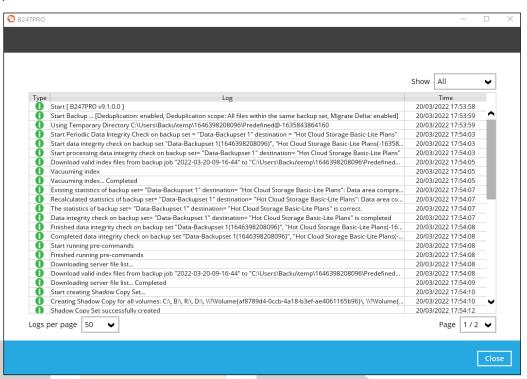
Choose Your Backup Options
Data Backup
Backup set type File Destinations ✓ G Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans ✓ Migrate Data Migrate Data Migrate existing data to latest version Retention Policy ✓ Run Retention Policy after backup Hide advanced option
Previous Backup Cancel Help

6. The following screen will be displayed to indicate that the backup job is successfully completed. You may click the button to check for the backup log.

🕚 B247Pi	RO					- 🗆	$\times$
			Backup	۲			
			Dachup	)			
		Data-Backupset	: 1				
		File					
		Hot Cloud Storage	Basic-Lite Plans				
		Backup Complet	ed Successfully		LQ		
		Estimated time left					
		Backed up Elapsed time	60B (1 file, 2 directories, 0 link) 29 sec				
		Transfer rate	32bit/s				
					Clo	ose He	lp



7. Once you are done with checking the backup log, click the **Close** button to return to the previous screen.



243



# **14 Restore Data**

## 14.1 Restore Method

244

Advanced Client (B247PRO) supports two restore methods:

- Traditional Restore
- OpenDirect Restore applies only to File backup sets with OpenDirect feature enabled

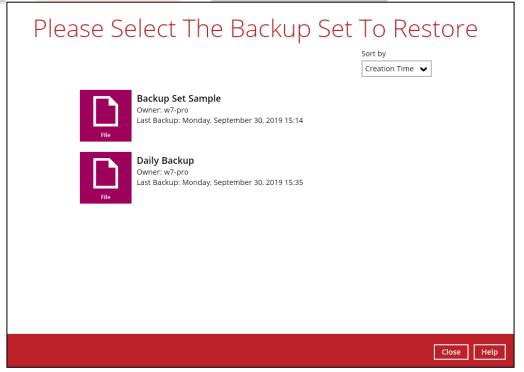
For more details on the differences of the two restore methods, refer to the <u>Benefits of using</u> <u>OpenDirect Restore</u>.

### 14.1.1 Traditional Restore

- Log in to the Advanced Client (B247PRO) application according to the instructions in section <u>Chapter 8 Logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO)</u>.
- 2. Click the **Restore** icon on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) main interface.



3. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.





4.	Select the destination where you would like to restore your data from.			
	Please Select The Backup Set To Restore	2		
	Sort by Creation Time			
	Data-Backupset 1 Owner: DESKTOP-L00BKNP Last Backup: Sunday, 20 March 2022 17:53			
	File    backup-set-name-2 Owner: DESKTOP-L00BKNP Last Backup: Sunday, 20 March 2022 09:23			
	Close	Help		
5.	Select Normal restore.			
	Select From Where To Restore			
	Data-Backupset 1			
	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans			

6. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available, then select the files or folders that you would like to restore.

There are two options from the **Select what to restore** dropdown menu:

Choose from files as of job – This option allows you to select a backup version from a specific date and time to restore.

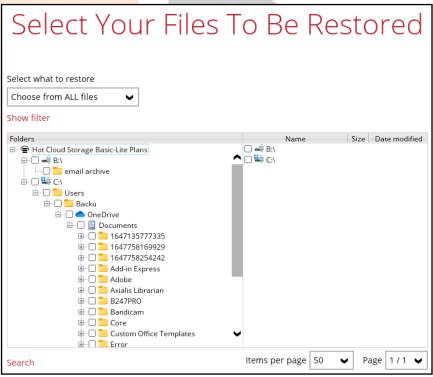
Select what to restore	
Choose from files as of job 🖌	09/30/2019 🗙 Latest 🖌
Choose from files as of job	
Choose from ALL files	Name

Select what to restore		
Choose from files as of job $~ullet$	09/30/2019 🖌	Latest 🖌
Show filter	09/30/2019	



0 B247PRO			X
V 824/PKO	-	L	^
Select Your Files To Be Restored			
Select Your Files To be Restored			
Select what to restore			
Choose from files as of job 👻 20/03/2022 👻 Latest 👻			
Show filter Latest			
Folders Na 17:53 Size Date modified			
B→			
🗄 🗔 🚬 email archive			
ia- □ 📫 C/			
( )			
Search Items per page 50 V Page 1/1 V	1		
	1		
	C		
Previous	Cancel	Help	<u>P</u>

Choose from ALL files – This option allows you to restore all the available backup versions for this backup set. Among all the available backup versions, you can even select only some of the backup versions of a file to restore.



The following is an example showing all the available backup versions of the file **Test files.rtf**. The latest version is shown in solid black color and all the previous versions are shown in grey color. You can identify the file version from the **Date modified** column.



Name	Size	Date modified
🗹 🚞 Test files.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
<ul> <li>Test files.rtf</li> </ul>	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
<ul> <li>Test files.rtf</li> </ul>	1 KB	08/01/2019 13:40
🗹 🚞 Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
Test files_2.rtf	1 KB	08/01/2019 13:40
🗹 📋 Text files.txt	2 KB	09/30/2019 15:57
<ul> <li>Text files.txt</li> </ul>	1 KB	09/30/2019 15:55
<ul> <li>Text files.txt</li> </ul>	0 KB	08/01/2019 12:02

When the restore is done, you will see all the selected backup versions in the restore destination. The latest backup version has the file name as the original file, while the previous versions have the time stamps added to their file names for easy identification.

	Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
1	🚞 Test files	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	🚞 Test files_2	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	🚞 Test files_2_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 1:40 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	🚞 Test files_2_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:55 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	🚞 Test files_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 1:40 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	🚞 Test files_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:56 PM	Rich Text Docu	1 KB
	📄 Text files	9/30/2019 3:57 PM	Text Document	2 KB
	📄 Text files_2019-09-30-15-43-06	8/1/2019 12:02 PM	Text Document	0 KB
	📄 Text files_2019-09-30-15-56-12	9/30/2019 3:55 PM	Text Document	1 KB

- 7. Click the **Show files** checkbox to select individual files for restoration. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selections.
- 8. Select to restore the files to their **Original location**, or to an **Alternate location**. Then, click **Next** to proceed.
  - Original location The backed-up data will be restored to the computer running Advanced Client (B247PRO) under the same directory path as on the machine storing the backup source.

For example, if the backup source files are stored under the Users/[User's Name]/Downloads folder, the data will be restored to the Users/[User's Name]/Downloads folder as well on the computer running Advanced Client (B247PRO).

Choose Wh	ere The Files To Be Restored
Restore files to <ul> <li>Original location</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Alternate location</li> </ul>	Browse
	This share requires access credentials
Show advanced option	

Alternate location – You can choose to restore the data to a location of your choice on the computer where Advanced Client (B247PRO) is running or to a network drive.



i. To restore to a location of your choice on the computer where Advanced Client (B247PRO) is running, click Browse. Select the location and click **OK**.

Choose Wher	0		Change Path	×	Р
Restore files to Original location Alternate location C:\Users This s Show advanced option	Look in Recent Items Desktop Documents This PC	Folder name : Files of type :	C: Users \Administrator \Desktop \alternation		σ

ii. To restore to a network drive, enter the network address where you want the backup files to be restored.

Choose Where The Files To Be Re	estored
Restore files to	
Alternate location \\125.5.184.23\alternate	Browse
This share requires access credentials	
Show advanced option	

Check the box beside **This share requires access credentials** if the network drive was set up with password. Enter the User name and Password.

Choose W	here The Files To Be	Restored
Restore files to Original location		
<ul> <li>Alternate location</li> </ul>	\\125.5.184.23\restored	Browse
	This share requires access credentials	
	User name (e.g. domain\username)	
	username	
	Password	
	••••	

- Show advanced option
- 9. Click **Show advanced option** to configure other restore settings:

Restore files to
<ul> <li>Original location</li> </ul>
O Alternate location
 [ ] 1
Show advanced option



Restore file permissions
 Delete unmatched data in restore location
 Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore
 Hide advanced option

#### > Restore file permissions

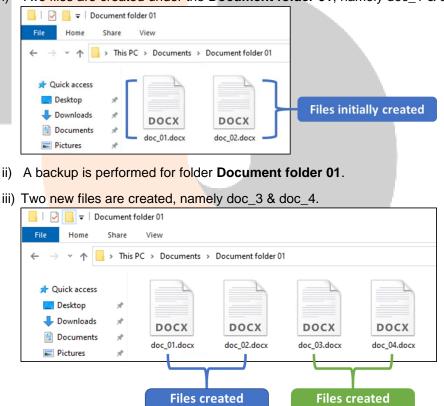
Restore file permissions are disabled by default. When you perform a file restore on shared files or folders using a shared computer, it is recommended that you enable Restore file permissions by ticking the checkbox so that the files restored will not be fully accessible to everyone using the shared computer.

#### Delete unmatched data in restore location

By enabling this option, the restore process will attempt to synchronize the selected restore source with the restore destination, making sure the data in the restore destination is the same as the restore source. Any data created after backup will be treated as "unmatched data" and will be deleted from the restore source if this feature is enabled.

#### Example:

i) Two files are created under the **Document folder 01**, namely doc\_1 & doc\_2.



iv) A restore is performed for the **Document folder 01**, with **Delete unmatched** data in restore location option enabled.

AFTER backup

**BEFORE** backup

v) Since doc\_3 & doc\_4 have never been backed up, therefore they will be deleted from **Document folder 01**, leaving only the two files that have been backed up.



I     Image: Share     View	
<ul> <li>← → · · ↑</li> <li>→ This PC → Documents → Document folder 01</li> <li>* Quick access</li> <li>Desktop *</li> <li>→ Downloads *</li> <li>→ Documents *</li> <li>→ Documents</li></ul>	Files remain after restore created

#### WARNING

Please exercise extra caution when enabling this feature. Consider what data in the restore source has not been backed up and what impact it would cause if those data were deleted. Prior to the data restore and synchronization, a warning message shows as the one shown below. Only clicking **Yes** will the "unmatched data" be deleted. You can click **Apply to all** to confirm deleting all the "unmatched data" at a time.

#### > Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore

Verify checksum of in-file delta files during restore is disabled by default. When you perform restore for non-RunDirect backup set, you can enable the feature by ticking the checkbox so that the checksum of in-file delta files will be verified. As the feature will make the restore process time longer, it is recommended to enable the feature only if you want to verify if the merged file were correct.

- 10. Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the settings.
- 11. Select the temporary directory for storing temporary restore files.

By default, the temporary files are stored under the temp directory of the user profile directory. In case the same directory path does not exist in the computer where Advanced Client (B247PRO) is running, you have to click **Browse** to define a new location for storing the temporary files. Otherwise, you will not be able to perform a restore.

Temporary directory for storing restore files	
C:\Users\Backu\temp	Browse



12.	Click the	Restore	button	to start	the	restore	job.
-----	-----------	---------	--------	----------	-----	---------	------

B247PRO				— (
	Tem	nporary [	Directory	
	Temporary directory for storing	g restore files		
	C:\Users\Backu\temp			Browse
			Previous	Restore Cancel
og.	ly completed. You			
B247PRO				
B24/PRO				-
6247PRO		Resto	re	-
624/PRO		Resto	re	-
6247FNU	Data-Backupset 1	Resto	re	-
6247FNU	Data-Backupset 1	Resto	re	-
D24/PNU	Data-Backupset 1		re	_
D24/PNU	File	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully	re	 Q
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored	sic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files)	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans J Successfully O sec	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
D24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
b24/PNU	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_
E <i>chiPh</i> U	Hot Cloud Storage Ba Restore Completed Estimated time left Restored Elapsed time	isic-Lite Plans I Successfully 0 sec 437.30MB (130 files) 1 min 0 sec	re	_



14. Once you are done with checking the restore log, click the **Close** button to return to the previous screen.

		Show	All	`
Туре	Log		Time	
0	Start [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]	20/03	/2022 18:27:01	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\1647135777335"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\1647758169929"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\1647758254242"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Add-in Express"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Adobe"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Adobe\Photoshop Cl	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Axialis Librarian"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Axialis Librarian\Del	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\B247PRO"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Bandicam"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Creating new directory "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Core"	20/03	/2022 18:27:03	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\2019 Tax Return for Review - Is	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Ahsay CBS Issue.docx" (Total 7	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Resolution letter 1503.pdf" (To	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Pestworks History.docx" (Total	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\Solar Loan Direct Debit Reque	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
0	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C_\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\commsec_error.PNG" (Total 5	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	
A	Downloading "C:\Users\Backu\OneDrive\Desktop\C \Users\Backu\OneDrive\Documents\debug.log" (Total 464 bytes)	20/03	/2022 18:27:07	

### 14.1.2 OpenDirect Restore

This restore method applies to backup sets created with OpenDirect restore enabled only.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Before you proceed with the OpenDirect Restore, make sure the following dependencies are fulfilled. Failure to do so may cause the restore to fail.

- Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 Redistributable (x86) / (x64) https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/download/details.aspx?id=48145
- Update for Universal C Runtime in Windows <u>https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/help/2999226/update-for-universal-c-runtime-in-windows</u>
- Microsoft Security Advisory 3033929 (for Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2) <u>https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/security/3033929.aspx</u>
- 1. Log in to the Advanced Client (B247PRO) application according to the instructions in section Chapter 8 Logging in to Advanced Client (B247PRO).
- 2. Click the **Restore** icon on the Advanced Client (B247PRO) main interface.





3. All the available backup sets for restore will be listed. Select the backup set that you would like to restore data from.

Please Se	elect The Backup Set	To Restore
		Sort by Creation Time
File	<b>Backup Set Sample</b> Owner: w7-pro Last Backup: Monday, September 30, 2019 15:14	
File	<b>Daily Backup</b> Owner: w7-pro Last Backup: Monday, September 30, 2019 15:57	
File	<b>OpenDirect Backup</b> Owner: w7-pro Last Backup: Wednesday, October 02, 2019 11:06	

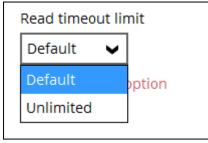
4. Select where you would like to restore your data from.

	_
Select The Destination From Which To Restor	,
OpenDirect Backup	
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans	

5. Select Open backup data directly without restoration (OpenDirect).

Please Choose A Restore Mode
Restore mode Normal restore Open backup data directly without restoration (OpenDirect) Show advanced option

You may select the Read timeout limit by clicking Show advanced option.



This selection defines the duration when the OpenDirect restore session will be disconnected if there is no response from the mounted compressed or image file.



- Default This setting should be suitable for compressed or image file located on a local, removable, or network drive. The time out value is15 seconds.
- **Unlimited** the connection will not be time out when this is selected. This selection is recommended under the following usage:
  - Backup destination is a cloud stroage.
  - B247CBS over the Internet.
  - A large compressed or image file with large incremental delta chain.



If in doubt or unsure about the compressed or image file size or network stability, it is recommended to use **Unlimited**.

Click **Next** to proceed when you are done with the selection.

6. Select to restore files from a specific backup job, or from all files available, then select the files or folders that you would like to restore.

Select Yo	ur Files To Be	Re	stored
Select what to restore			
Choose from files as of job	✔ 10/02/2019 ✔ Latest ✔		
Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
		347 KB	10/02/2019 11:03
en · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		347 KB 271 KB	10/02/2019 11:03 10/02/2019 11:04

7. Select a temporary directory for storing restore files, then click Restore to start the OpenDirect restore.

Temporary Directory	
Temporary directory for storing restore files	

- 8. Click **Restore** to start the restore. The status will be shown.
- 9. The following screen shows when you perform OpenDirect restore for this backup set on this machine for the first time only. Make sure you click **Yes** to confirm mounting the file(s) on this machine. Clicking **No** will exit the restore process.

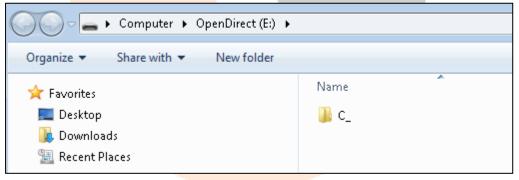


	OpenDirect	
C	OpenDirect Backup	
? Vir	tual File System Driver - Driver is not installed, Install?	
Apply to all		Yes No

10. You will be prompted to select drive letter where you wish the mounted files to be mapped on your machine, click **OK** when you have finished selection.

OpenDirect	
OpenDirect Backup	
Please choose a drive letter, and also add the drive to exception list of antivirus or security software in advance.	
	Ок

11. The selected drive letter will be mapped and prompted in the Windows Files Explorer with the files you wish to restore shown.



12. You can now click on the files to view them directly from here, which will be in readonly mode.

▶ C_ ▶ Users ▶ Administrator ▶ Documents ▶			
Name	Date modified	Туре	Size
🚹 OpenDirect Restore 01	10/2/2019 11:03 AM	Compressed (zipp	347 KB
🌗 OpenDirect Restore 02	10/2/2019 11:04 AM	Compressed (zipp	271 KB
🜗 OpenDirect Restore 03	10/2/2019 11:03 AM	Compressed (zipp	212 KB



C_ ► Users ► Administrator ► Documer	ts 🔸 OpenDirect Restore 01 🕨	OpenDirect Restore 01	
Name	Туре	Compressed size	Password
🌉 box image	PNG image	2 KB	No
尾 box image_2	PNG image	2 KB	No
😹 Copy of the Sample image	Bitmap image	0 KB	No
📄 Data	Text Document	0 KB	No
💽 Diagram	PNG image	74 KB	No
Excel file.xlsx	XLSX File	6 KB	No

You may also copy individual file(s) you wish to restore toyour local machine.

C_ + Users + Administrator + Documents + OpenDirect Restore 01 + OpenDirect Restore 01				
Name	Туре		Compressed size	Password
📭 box image	PNG ir	mage	2 KB	No
💽 box image_2	PNG ir	mage	2 KB	No
🔣 Copy of the Sample im	i <b>age</b> Bitmaj	p image	0 KB	No
📋 Data	Tevt D	oqument	0 KB	No
📭 Diagram	Open	ige	74 KB	No
Excel file.xlsx	Сору		6 KB	No
File_1.pptx		2	0 KB	No
File_2.pptx	Properties		0 KB	No

13. The mounted drive letter cannot be ejected from the Windows File Explorer, it will only be closed when you exit Advanced Client (B247PRO).



14. When you have finished restoring the necessary files, you can go back to Advanced Client (B247PRO) and click **Cancel** to exit the OpenDirect Restore.



OpenDirect
OpenDirect Backup
Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans Mounting virtual file systemCompleted Elapsed time 10 min 11 sec Transfer rate 0bit/s OpenDirect (E:)
OpenDirect
OpenDirect Backup
Are you sure to stop the OpenDirect?
Stop the OpenDirect Cancel
IMPORTANT
<ol> <li>As a result of the limitation of the virtual file system library, the mapped drive will only be unmounted from your machine when you exit Advanced Client (B247PRO). In other word each OpenDirect restore session on Advanced Client (B247PRO) can only mount an unmount once.</li> </ol>
2. <b>OpenDirect restore</b> of file backup sets:
Will not show up on the <b>Restore Status</b> tab in Live Activities of the backup service provider B247CBS. <b>Restore Status</b> tab in Live Activities only applies to the restore performed directly through Advanced Client (B247PRO).
<ul> <li>Will not generate restore reports or report email on backup service provider B247CBS.</li> </ul>
Will not generate restore log on Advanced Client (B247PRO).

### 14.2 Restore Filter

257

This search feature allows you to search directories, files, and folders.

To make it more flexible, the search feature offers filtering. You can add additional pattern upon searching. Pattern includes the following criteria:

#### Contains

These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **<u>containing</u>** the specific letter or word.

Exact



٦

These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the **exact** or **accurate** name.

#### Start With

These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **<u>starting</u>** with a specific letter or word.

#### Ends With

These are Directories, Files, and Folders with the name **ending** with a specific letter or word.

It also has the **Match Case** function, which serves as an additional accuracy when searching for any specific directories, files, folders, and mails.

For more detailed examples using the restore filter on Advanced Client (B247PRO), refer to Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter.

Log in to Advanced Client (B247PRO) according to the instructions in <u>Chapter 8 Logging in to</u> <u>Advanced Client (B247PRO)</u>.

- 1 Click the **Restore** icon on the main interface of Advanced Client (B247PRO).
- 2 Select the backup set that you would like to restore.

Please Se	elect The Backup Set To Restore
File	Sample Backup Set 01 Owner: w2k16R2-std Last Backup: Tuesday, August 20, 2019 14:57
File	Sample Backup Set 02 Owner: w2k16R2-std Newly created on Tuesday, August 20, 2019 14:51
File	Sample Backup Set 03 Owner: w2k16R2-std Newly created on Tuesday, August 20, 2019 14:51
	Close Help

3 Select the backup destination that you would like to restore backed up items to.



🕑 B247PRO	- • ×
	Select From Where To Restore
	Data-Backupset 1
	Hot Cloud Storage Basic-Lite Plans
	Previous Cancel Help
	Previous Cancel Help





0 B247PRO	- O X
	Select Your Files To Be Restored
	Select what to restore
	Choose from files as of job 🖌 20/03/2022 🖌 Latest 🖌
	Show filter
	Folders     Name     Size     Date modified       □     ●     ●     ●     ●     ●       □     ●     ●     ●     ●       □     ●     ●     ●     ●
	Search Items per page 50 V Page 1/1 V
	Previous Next Cancel Help

4 Click the Search located on the lower left side of the screen.

Click the **Change** button to change the path of the restore items from other location.

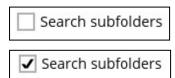
Look in   Change  Change  Change  Change  Change  Change  Match case  Search  Name In Folder Size Date modified  Items per page  S0	Search			
Search subfolders     Kind     Files and Directories     Contains     Search     Name     In Folder     Size        Date modified	Look in			
Kind     Type     Pattern       Files and Directories     contains     Image: Match case         Search         Name     In Folder     Size     Date modified				Change
Files and Directories       Contains       Match case         Search       Name       In Folder       Size         Name       In Folder       Size       Date modified	<ul> <li>Search subfolders</li> </ul>			
Search Name In Folder Size Date modified	Kind	Type Pattern		
Name In Folder Size Date modified	Files and Directories $~ullet$	contains 🖌		Match case
Items per page 50 V Page - V	Name	in rouer	3128	Date modified
		]		Page - 🗸



Change Path						
Backup Server						
						DK Cancel
		-				
Search						
Search						
	ents\TestFile	25			Change	
Look in	ients\TestFile	25			Change	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Type	e	es Pattern				
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Type					Change	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Type	e					
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Type Files and Directories V cor	e		Size	Date		
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Typ: Files and Directories V cor Search	e ntains 🖌		Size	Date	Match case	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Docum Search subfolders Kind Type Files and Directories  Search Name Name	e ntains 🖌		Size	Date	Match case	ncel Help



6 Tick the **Search subfolders** checkbox to include available subfolders upon searching.



- 7 Select from the following Kind of files you want to search.
  - Files and Directories
  - Files only
  - Directories
- 8 Select from the following Type of filtering you want to search.
  - Contains
  - Exact
  - Starts With
  - Ends With
- 9 Enter a pattern you want and tick the **Match case** checkbox if you want to accurately search for a specific file.

Pattern	
	Match case
Pattern	
Sheet	✓ Match case

24/7

10 Click the **Search** button and the result will be displayed.



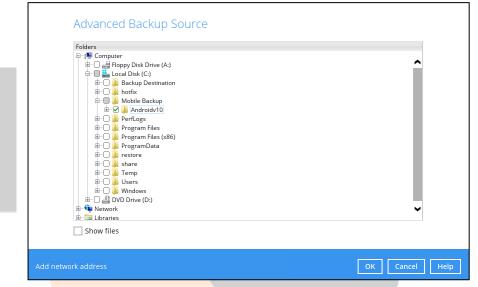
11 Check all the items or check a specific item that you want and click the **OK** button to proceed, and you will return to the restore main screen.



## 15 Mobile Backup and Restore to B247CBS and Predefined Destination

To perform a mobile backup and restore to B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination, follow the instructions below:

- Backup photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app to Advanced Client (B247PRO) local destination. For more detailed information, refer to Chapter 10 of the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) User Guide for Android and iOS.
- Create a File backup set according to the instructions in <u>Chapter 11 Create Backup</u> <u>Set</u> with the following setup:
  - The backup source should be the photos, videos, documents and/or 2FA account(s) backed up in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) local destination. In this example, the backup source is located in: C:\Mobile Backup\%Mobile device%



The backup destination must be B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination (i.e., Google Drive, OneDrive, Hot Cloud, etc.)

B247PRO			_		×
	Destination				
	Backup mode Sequential				
	Previous	Next	Cancel	Hel	p



#### > The **OpenDirect Restore** feature must be disabled.

OpenDirect
OpenDirect Of  Support of openning backup data directly without restoration.  When OpenDirect is enabled, to optimize restore performance both compression and encryption will be disabled for this backup set.  Once OpenDirect is enabled and the setting is saved, it cannot be disabled without re-creating the backup set.
Previous Next Cancel Help

3. After creating the backup set, run a backup job according to the instructions in <u>Chapter 13.3 Start Manual Backup</u>. Below is an example of a backup report for mobile backup data.

Log		Time
Star [ B247PRO v9.1.0.0 ]	11/05/	2021 14:49:48
Saving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server	11/05/	2021 14:49:48
Start Backup [Migrate Delta: Incremental]	11/05/	2021 14:49:49
Using Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\.obm\temp\1636094953016\OBS@16360949725	11/05/	2021 14:49:49
Start running pre-commands	11/05/	2021 14:49:50
Finished running pre-commands	11/05/	2021 14:49:50
Downloading server file list	11/05/	2021 14:49:50
Downloading server file list Completed	11/05/	2021 14:49:50
Reading backup source from hard disk	11/05/	2021 14:49:51
Reading backup source from hard disk Completed	11/05/	2021 14:49:52
[New Directory] C:\	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\6x96VbPF1erFPN91sii6wKUuVWuWXI9L5VgRRIMulb	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\blocks	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\6x96VbPF1erFPN91sii6wKUuVWuWXI9L5VgRRIMulb	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05-14-22-29	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
[New Directory] C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05-14-22-29\0	11/05/	2021 14:49:53
Now Eilal 100% of "CMMobile PackupMedraids10\6v06\/bDE1arEDN01cii6s//LUMA/JM/VI0L5\/aDDIM	11/05/	2021 14:40:52
er page 50 🗸		Page 1/4 🖌
		-
	aving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server isart Backup [Migrate Delta: Incremental] Jsing Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\.obm\temp\1636094953016\OBS@16360949725 isart running pre-commands Downloading server file list Downloading server file list Downloading server file list Downloading server file list Completed Reading backup source from hard disk Reading backup source from hard disk New Directory] C:Mobile Backup New Directory] C:Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550 New Directory] C:Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550 New Directory] C:Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550 New Directory] C:Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\blocks New Directory] C:Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05-14-22-29 New Direc	aving encrypted backup set encryption keys to server     11/05/       istart Backup [Migrate Delta: Incremental]     11/05/       Jsing Temporary Directory C:\Users\Administrator\.obm\temp\1636094953016\OBS@16360949725     11/05/       inished running pre-commands     11/05/       Jownloading server file list     11/05/       Downloading server file list     11/05/       Jownloading server file list     11/05/       Downloading server file list     11/05/       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup Administrator\.obm\temp\1636092696550       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29\0       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29\0       New Directory]     C:\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\1636092696550\16locks\2021-11-05-14-22-29\0



4. Restore data according to the instructions in <u>Chapter 14.1.1 Traditional Restore</u>.

There are two (2) options to restore data from B247CBS and/or Predefined Destination to the mobile device, Original location, and Alternate location.

 Original location - data will be restored on the original location which is the backup destination for your mobile device.

Using this option, you can perform seamless restore to your mobile device as the location is the same with the mobile backup destination.

 Alternate location - data will be restored on an alternate location which can be setup anywhere in the Advanced Client (B247PRO) local machine. If you choose this option, then restoring to your mobile device will have to be manually done. There are two (2) options available.

**NOTE:** Restore to alternate location is not supported on another Advanced Client (B247PRO) machine. Options 1 and 2 must be on the original machine where the backups were performed.

In case the original machine is no longer available, Advanced Client (B247PRO) will be able to restore the photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from B247CBS or Predefined Destination to the mobile backup destination folder. However, as the mobile devices were not originally paired with the new installation or machine, the mobile devices will not be able to restore the photos, videos, documents and 2FA accounts from the Advanced Client (B247PRO).

Option 1: Copy the restored data from an Alternate Location to the Original Location which is the backup destination for your mobile device.

Example of the Alternate location:

#### C:\Alt Location

	Picture Tools		0		- • ×
File Home Share View	Manage				^
Copy Paste shortcut		New folder New Xew	rties 🔁 History	lect all lect none vert selection Select	
🔄 🄄 👻 🕆 퉬 C:\Alt Location\C	_\Mobile Backup\Androidv10	\1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05	-14-22-29\0 ∨ C	Search 0	م
☆ Favorites	^ Name	Date	Туре	Size Tags	
Desktop	2000000	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
Downloads	2 000001	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
📃 Recent places	000002	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
	<b>CO0003</b>	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🥽 Libraries	2000004	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
Documents	200005	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🎝 Music	200006	11/5/2021 2:04 PM	JPG File	2,681 KB	
Pictures	200007	11/5/2021 2:05 PM	JPG File	1,846 KB	
📑 Videos	200008	11/5/2021 2:06 PM	JPG File	2,062 KB	
_	200009	11/5/2021 2:07 PM	PNG File	1,076 KB	
Computer					
Local Disk (C:)					
🎍 share (W8-PRO (this computer))	*				
10 items					8== 8



Example of the Original location:

#### C:\Mobile Backup

l 🗋 🔂 = 1	Picture Tools	0		-	
File Home Share Vie	w Manage				^
Copy Paste & Copy path	Move Copy to * to *	folder	Copen → Coperties C	Select all Select none	
Clipboard	Organize	New	Open	Select	
📀 🍥 🔻 ↑ 퉬 C:\Mobile Ba	ckup\Androidv10\1636092696550	\blocks\2021-11-05-14-22-29\0	✓ C	Search 0	۶
☆ Favorites	^ Name ^	Date	Туре	Size	Tags
Desktop	200000	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
🐌 Downloads	2000001	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
💹 Recent places	<b></b> 000002	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
	<b>CO0003</b>	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
🧊 Libraries	200004	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
Documents	<b>CO0005</b>	4/14/2021 3:52 PN	1 PNG File	281 KB	
👌 Music	200006	11/5/2021 2:04 PN	1 JPG File	2,681 KB	
Pictures	200007	11/5/2021 2:05 PN	1 JPG File	1,846 KB	
📑 Videos	800000 ⊾	11/5/2021 2:06 PM	1 JPG File	2,062 KB	
	200009	11/5/2021 2:07 PM	1 PNG File	1,076 KB	
👰 Computer					
📥 Local Disk (C:)					
🎍 share (W8-PRO (this compu	ter)) 🗸 <				_

You can now use the Backup247 Mobile (B247MOB) app to restore the photos and videos back to your mobile device.

Option 2: Copy the restored data from the Alternate Location to your Android or iOS mobile device.

Instructions:

• For an Android device, you need to plug your cable and transfer the restored data from the Alternate Location to your mobile device storage.

Example of the Alternate Location:

#### C:\Alt Location

	Picture Tools		0		- • ×
	Manage Move Copy to * to * Organize	New item • Proper Folder New	Edit Se ties History	lect all lect none vert selection Select	^
🔄 🄄 👻 ↑ 🚺 C:\Alt Location	n\C_\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\	1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05-	14-22-29\0 🗸 🖒	Search 0	م
★ Favorites	^ Name ^	Date	Туре	Size Tag	s
Desktop	200000	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🐌 Downloads	200001	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
📃 Recent places	2000002	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
	<b>CO0003</b>	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🥽 Libraries	<b>CO0004</b>	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
Documents	<b>2</b> 000005	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🎝 Music	<b>200006</b>	11/5/2021 2:04 PM	JPG File	2,681 KB	
E Pictures	2000007	11/5/2021 2:05 PM	JPG File	1,846 KB	
Videos	200008	11/5/2021 2:06 PM	JPG File	2,062 KB	
	200009	11/5/2021 2:07 PM	PNG File	1,076 KB	
👰 Computer					
🚢 Local Disk (C:)					
🎍 share (W8-PRO (this compute	r))				
10 items	v				8== 6

#### Mobile device storage: Android device Internal storage and SD card

🚚   🗹 📕 =   Androidv10		
File Home Share View		
$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ 📲 $\diamond$ This PC $\diamond$ An	droidv10	~
<ul> <li>Quick access</li> <li>Dropbox</li> <li>OneDrive</li> <li>This PC</li> </ul>	Internal shared storage 28.2 GB free of 48.9 GB	SanDisk SD card 29.2 GB free of 29.7 GB



• For an iOS device, you need to transfer the restored data from the Alternate Location to iCloud.

Example of the Alternate Location:

#### C:\Alt Location

1 🖸 🚺 = 1	Picture Tools		0		
File Home Share View	Manage				^
	Nove Copy to *	New folder	Edit 🔡 s	Select all Select none nvert selection	
Clipboard	Organize	New	Open	Select	
(€) → ↑ 🚺 C:\Alt Location	\C_\Mobile Backup\Androidv10\	1636092696550\blocks\2021-11-05-	14-22-29\0 🗸	🖞 Search 0	م
🔆 Favorites	^ Name ^	Date	Туре	Size T	ags
Desktop	2000000	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
鷆 Downloads	2 000001	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
📃 Recent places	200002	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
	2 000003	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
🥽 Libraries	200004	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
Documents	2000005	4/14/2021 3:52 PM	PNG File	281 KB	
👌 Music	▲ 000006	11/5/2021 2:04 PM	JPG File	2,681 KB	
Pictures	2000007	11/5/2021 2:05 PM	JPG File	1,846 KB	
😸 Videos	200008	11/5/2021 2:06 PM	JPG File	2,062 KB	
	200009	11/5/2021 2:07 PM	PNG File	1,076 KB	
🖳 Computer					
📥 Local Disk (C:)					
🎍 share (W8-PRO (this computer	))				
10 items	÷				8==

Upload to iCloud using the iCloud app

Cloud		-	□ × 11.4
	iCloud Drive		
	Photos		Options
iCloud	Mail, Contacts, Calendars, and Tasks With Outlook		
Aki Sam Tom aki.sam.tom@gmail.com	Bookmarks With Chrome		Options
akisamitonreginalitoni	You have 5.00 GB of iCloud storage.		
	4.97 GB		Storage
Account details			iCloud Help
Sign out		Apply	Close



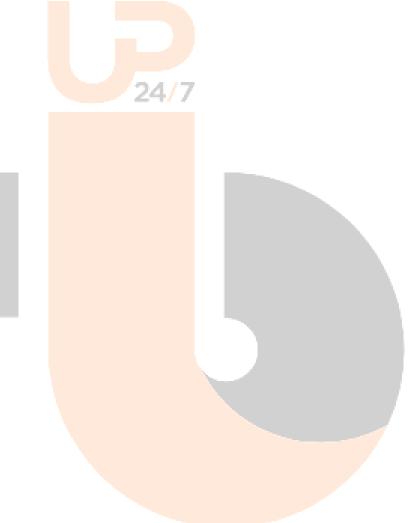
# 16 Contact Backup247

### 16.1 Technical Assistance

To contact Backup247 support representatives for technical assistance, visit our website <u>https://backup247.com.au/</u> for contact details.

### 16.2 Documentation

Documentations for all Backup247 modules, user guide and QuickStart are available on our website. Alternatively, email us on <a href="mailto:support@backup247.com.au">support@backup247.com.au</a> for technical demo.



268



# Appendix

3 Intel® Graphics Driver

### Appendix A: Uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO)

Follow the steps below to uninstall Advanced Client (B247PRO) from your Windows.

1. Go to **Control Panel > Programs and Features > Uninstall a program**, then look for Advanced Client (B247PRO) and double click on it.

Adjust your computer's settings			Viev	v by: Category 🔻	
System and Security Review your computer's status Back up your computer Find and fix problems	<b>S</b>	User Accounts Change account t Appearance and		zation	
Network and Internet View network status and tasks Choose homegroup and sharing	options	Change the theme Change desktop bac Adjust screen resolut	kground		
Hardware and Sound View devices and printers Add a device	Ð	Clock, Language Change keyboards of Fase of Access	-		
Programs Uninstall a program Get programs	G	Let Windows suggest settings Optimize visual display			
Uninstall or change a program To uninstall a program, select it from the list and Organize 👻	then click Uninstall, Change, or Repai	r.			
Name	Publisher	Installed	Size	Version	
🔈 Adobe Acrobat DC (64-bit)	Adobe	12/01/2022	535 MB	21.011.20039	
🖯 McAfee LiveSafe	McAfee, LLC	9/03/2022	515 MB	16.0 R44	
🛑 Mozilla Firefox (x64 en-US)	Mozilla	16/03/2022			
□ 🕐 B247PRO	BACKUP247 PTY LTE				
Microsoft OneDrive	<ul> <li>Microsoft Corporat</li> </ul>			22.033.0213.0002	
🏶 Slack	Slack Technologies	nc. 9/01/2022	90.9 MB	4.23.0	

2. The following dialog box will appear only if User Account Control is enabled. Click **Continue** when you see the following message.

Intel Corporation

20/11/2021

74.2 MB 23.20.16.4849

you started	this action, cont	inue.		
a	Uninstall or cha Microsoft Wind	ange an ap <mark>pl</mark> icatio Iows	'n	
✓ Details			Continue	Cancel



#### 3. Click **Yes** to confirm and proceed with the uninstallation.

B247PRO	Uninstall	$\times$
?	Are you sure that you want to completely remove B247PRO and all of its components?	
	<u>Y</u> es <u>N</u> o	]

#### When you see the following screen:

Uninstalli	ng B247PRO					
Jninstall	Do you want to	) keep all user se	ttings and encry	ption kev	s for this	×
?	application ?			,,		
			Yes		No	

Choose Yes to keep all user settings and the encryption keys associated with the users. If you are likely to install Advanced Client (B247PRO) on the same machine in the future again, the user settings, e.g., login details, backup sets and so forth will remain in C:\Users\[username]\.obm by default. The screen capture below shows the folders remain in the machine after uninstallation.

$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ This PC $\rightarrow$ Windows (C:) $\rightarrow$ Users $\rightarrow$ Backu $\rightarrow$ .obm							
> 🛧 Ouick access	Name	Date modified	Туре				
	statistics	17/04/2022 3:14 AM	File folder				
> 🌰 OneDrive - Personal	🚞 system	17/04/2022 3:14 AM	File folder				
> 💻 This PC	🚞 ipc	17/04/2022 3:14 AM	File folder				
> 🖆 Network	늘 log	17/04/2022 3:14 AM	File folder				
	📒 config	17/04/2022 3:14 AM	File folder				
	늘 mobile	17/04/2022 1:28 AM	File folder				
	📒 cache	16/04/2022 11:00 PM	File folder				

Choose No to delete all user settings and encryption keys with this uninstallation. Please be reminded that the encryption keys are not retrievable once they have been deleted unless the encryption keys have been uploaded to B247CBS server, and



therefore it will no longer be possible for backup user to recover their encryption key in case they do not have a separate written record.

If there is a Run Direct restore running at the time of the Advanced Client (B247PRO) uninstallation, the following screen prompts to alert you the NFS service is in use.

- Select No if you do not wish to force uninstall the NFS service. Advanced Client (B247PRO) will be uninstalled without affecting the NFS service, where the Run Direct restore will not be interrupted.
- Select Yes to force uninstall the NFS service. Both Advanced Client (B247PRO) and NFS service will be uninstalled from the machine. The VM running Run Direct restore and the datastore are both unmounted from the VMware server.

	Uninstall Stat Please wai		O is removed fro	m your comp	uter.			5
	Uninstalling	B247PRO						
			Unin	stall				x
		staller has dete install NFS ser	ected that NFS s vice now?	ervice is in u	ise. Do you v	vant to f	orce	
l					Yes		No	
						(	Cance	el

4. That completes B247PRO uninstallation from client's PC/Server.

(Optional) For a complete removal of all Advanced Client (B247PRO)-related files in your machine, please go to C:\Program Files and manually remove the Advanced Client (B247PRO) folder.

$\leftarrow$ $\rightarrow$ $\checkmark$ $\uparrow$ $\stackrel{\bullet}{\frown}$ $\rightarrow$ This PC $\rightarrow$ Wind	✓ ↑ → This PC → Windows (C:) → Program Files						
> 🛧 Quick access	Name ^	Date modified	Туре				
	📁 7-Zip	19/06/2019 10:5	File folder				
> 🌰 OneDrive - Personal	📒 Adobe	2/10/2021 2:14	File folder				
🗙 📮 This PC	B247PRO	20/03/2022 11:0	File folder				



## Appendix B: Example Scenarios for Restore Filter

**Example No.1:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Contains

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles		
Search subfolders:	True		
Kind:	Files and Directories		
Туре:	Contains		
Pattern:	Set		
Match Case:	True		

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on <u>Restore Filter</u>.

Search				
Look in				
C:\Users\Administrator\Do	cuments\TestFile	s	Change	
<ul> <li>Search subfolders</li> </ul>				
Kind	Туре	Pattern		
Files and Directories 🖌	contains 🖌	Set	✓ Match ca	se
Search				
Search				
Name	In Folder	Size	Date modified	
Items per page 50 🗸			Page - 🖌	•
			ок	Cancel Help
			Previous Next	Cancel Help



Search
Look in
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change
✓ Search subfolders
Kind Type Pattern
Files and Directories     Contains     Set
Searching Stop
Name In Folder Size Date modified
Items per page 50 V Page - V
OK Cancel Help
Search
Search Look in
Look in
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Files and Directories Contains Set Match case Search
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern Files and Directories Contains Set Search Name In Folder Size Date modified C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles 57 KB 04/11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern Files and Directories Contains Set Search Name In Folder Size Date modified C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18 BadupSet_002.txt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18
Look in  C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern  Files and Directories Contains Set  Match case  Search Name In Folder Size Date modified Size O4/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_001.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_004.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB
Look in C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search Files and Directories Contains Set  Match case Search Name In Folder Size Date modified BackupSet_001.txt C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K8 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_003.txt C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_003.txt C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_003.txt C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K 04/11/2019 11:18 C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_003.txt C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K 04/11/2019 11:18 C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7K SE
Look in  C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern  Files and Directories Contains Set  Match case  Search Name In Folder Size Date modified Size O4/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_001.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_004.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB
Look in  C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern  Files and Directories Contains Set  Match case  Search Name In Folder Size Date modified Size O4/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_001.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_004.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB
Look in C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Cintains Contains Centers Contains Centers Contains Centers
Look in  C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern  Files and Directories Contains Set  Match case  Search Name In Folder Size Date modified Size O4/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_001.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB 04/11/2019 11:18 BackupSet_004.bt C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB S7KB
Look in C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Cintains Contains Centers Contains Centers Contains Centers
Look in C:Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Cintains Contains Centers Contains Centers Contains Centers
Look in   C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change   Image: Search subfolders Image: Search subfolders   Kind Type Pattern   Files and Directories Contains Set     Search Image: Search subfolders     Image: Search subfolders     Search Image: Search subfolders     Search Image: Search subfolders     Image: Search subfolders Image: Search subfolders     Search State:

#### **Explanation:**

All files and directories under <u>C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles</u> that has the pattern that contains with 'Set' with match case set to true will be included upon performing search.

As you can see on the screen shot above, the result panel contains the Name of the file or directory, Directory which are indicated In-Folder column, Size, and Date Modified.



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'Set'.

**Example No.2:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Starts With

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles			
Search subfolders:	True			
Kind:	Files			
Туре:	Starts With			
Pattern:	A			
Match Case:	True			

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on Restore Filter.

Search				
Look in				
C:\Users\Administrator\D	ocuments\TestFile	S	Change	
<ul> <li>Search subfolders</li> </ul>				
Kind	Туре	Pattern		
Files only	starts with $~ullet$	A	✓ Match case	2
Search				
Name	le F	older Size	Date modified	1
Name	INF	older Size	Date modified	
Items per page 50 🛛 🗸	]		Page - 🗸	
			ок	Cancel Help
			Previous Next	Cancel Help



Search			
Search			
Look in			
C:\Users\Administrator\D	locuments\TestEile	20	Change
Search subfolders			Change
Kind	Туре	Pattern	
Files only	starts with V	A	Match case
	starts mar 🕈		
Searching	Stop		
Name	In F	Folder Size	Date modified
Items per page 50 👻			Page - 🖌
	_		
			OK Cancel Help
Search			
SPALLD			
Search			
Look in			
	ocuments\TestFile	25	Change
Look in	ocuments\TestFile	25	Change
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D	ocuments\TestFile	Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders			Change ✓ Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D I Search subfolders Kind	Туре	Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Name	Type starts with 🖌	Pattern A In Folder Size	Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Name Name Kind Look in Kind Search	Type starts with C:\Users\Administra C:\Users\Administra	Pattern A In Folder ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE 401 KE	✓ Match case     Date modified     0√11/2019 11:18     0√11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Name AertMessage0001.jpg AertMessage0001.jpg Kind Files AertMessage0001.jpg	Type starts with C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size ator\Documents\TestFiles 491KE ator\Documents\TestFiles 491KE 491	Date modified 04/11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Search Name AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0002.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg	Type starts with C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr C:\Users\Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE	Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Name AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size ator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator 'Documents\TestFiles 414,520 KE	✓ Match case           Oate modified           04/11/2019 11:18           04/11/2019 11:18           04/11/2019 11:18           04/11/2019 11:18           04/11/2019 11:18           04/11/2019 11:18           04/12/2019 11:18           04/12/2019 11:18           04/12/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Search Search Name AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage001.jpg AlertMessage	Type starts with C: Users \Administra C: Users \Administra	Pattern A In Folder Size ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 492 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 493 KE ator/Documents\TestFiles 49,520 KE 40,520 KE 40,5	Match case
Look in C:USers\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Name AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0002.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size tator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KB ator 'Documents\TestFiles 492 KB ator 'Documents\TestFiles 494 KB 404 K	Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Search Name AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage003.jpg Ale	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size Size Storpocuments\TestFiles	Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Search Search AertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg Ale	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size Size Storpocuments\TestFiles	✓ Match case         Date modified         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/12/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Searc	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size Size Storpocuments\TestFiles	✓ Match case         Date modified         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/11/2019 11:18         0/4/12/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27         08/20/2019 14:27
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files only Search Search Search AertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage000.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg AlertMessage00.jpg Ale	Type starts with C: Users \Administr C: Users \Administr	Pattern A In Folder Size ator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator 'Documents\TestFiles 491 KE ator 'Documents\TestFiles 14,520 KE ator 'Documents\T	✓ Match case         Ø411/2019 11:18         Ø411/2019 11:18         Ø411/2019 11:18         Ø411/2019 11:18         Ø4/11/2019 11:18         Ø4/11/2019 11:18         Ø4/11/2019 11:18         Ø4/2019 14:27         Ø8/20/2019 14:27         Ø8/20/2019 14:27         Ø8/20/2019 14:27         Page       1 / 1

#### Explanation:

All files and directories under <u>C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles</u> that has the pattern that starts with 'A' with match case set to true will be included upon performing search.

As you can see on the screen shot above, the result panel contains the Name of the file, Directory which are indicated In-Folder column, Size, and Date Modified.



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'A'.

**Example No.3:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Ends With

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles		
Search subfolders:	True		
Kind:	Files and Directories		
Туре:	Ends With		
Pattern:	g		
Match Case:	True		

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on Restore Filter.

	Search					
l	Look in					
	C:\Users\Administrator\Do	cuments\TestFile	s		Change	
[	<ul> <li>Search subfolders</li> </ul>					
ł	Kind	Туре	Pattern			
	Files and Directories 👻	ends with 🛛 👻	g		<ul> <li>Match case</li> </ul>	
	Search					
1	Name		In Folder	Size	Date modified	
-	Items per page 50 🗸				Page - 🖌	
					ОК Са	incel Help
				Previous	Next Ca	incel Help



Search		
Look in		
C:\Users\Administrator\E	ocuments\TestFiles	Change
Search subfolders		
Kind	Type Pattern	
Files and Directories 👻	ends with 🖌 g	✓ Match case
Searching	Stop	
Name	In Folder	Size Date modified
Items per page 50 👻	]	Page - 🗸
		OK Cancel Help
Search		
Look in	)ocuments\TestFiles	Change
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\E	Documents\TestFiles	Change
Look in	Documents\TestFiles Type Pattern	Change
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\[ Search subfolders		Change
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\I I Search subfolders Kind	Type Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\L Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories	Type Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\E Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories Search Name Name Name Name	Type Pattern ends with g In Folder C:\Users\4dministrator\Pocuments\TestFil	✓ Match case
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\E Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories Search Search AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg	Type Pattern ends with  g In Folder C:\Users\Administrator\Pocuments\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Pocuments\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Pocuments\TestFil	Size         Date modified           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\E Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories Search Name Name Name RameAlertMessage0001.jpg G AlertMessage0002.jpg	Type Pattern ends with g In Folder C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil	Size         Date modified           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\D Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories Search Name AlertMessage0002.jpg AlertMessage0002.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg	Type Pattern ends with  g In Folder C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil	Size         Date modified           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\[ Search subfolders Kind Files and Directories Search Search Name AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0001.jpg AlertMessage0003.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg AlertMessage0005.jpg	Type Pattern ends with  g In Folder C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFil	Size         Date modified           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18           les         491 K8         04/11/2019 11:18

#### **Explanation:**

All files and directories under <u>C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles</u> that has the pattern that ends with 'g' with match case set to true will be included upon performing search.

As you can see on the screen shot above, the result panel contains the Name of the files and directories, Directory which are indicated In-Folder column, Size, and Date Modified.



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'g'.

**Example No.4:** Restore filter setting from C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles with filter type Exact

Location:	C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles		
Search subfolders:	True		
Kind:	Files and Directories		
Туре:	Exact		
Pattern:	SpreadSheet_05.xlsx		
Match Case:	True		

Follow the step-by-step procedure indicated on Restore Filter.

Search						
Look in						
C:\Users\Administrator\D	ocuments\TestFile	25		Change		
<ul> <li>Search subfolders</li> </ul>						
Kind	Туре	Pattern				
Files and Directories 👻	exact 🗸 🗸	SpreadSheet_05.xlsx		✔ Match case		
Search						
Name	]	In Folder	Size [	Date modified		
				ОК Са	ncel	Help



Search	
Look in	
C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change	
Search subfolders	
Kind Type Pattern	
Files and Directories 🗸 exact 🗸 SpreadSheet_05.xlsx 🖌 Match case	
Searching Stop	
Name In Folder Size Date modified	
Items per page 50 V Page - V	
ОК Са	ancel Help
Previous Next Ca	
Coorch	
Search	
Search Look in	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  ✓ Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change  ✓ Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Cites and Directories Files and Directories Exact Search Name In Folder Size Date modified	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern Files and Directories Exact Search Search	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern Files and Directories Exact SpreadSheet_05.xlsx Match case Search Name In Folder Size Date modified	
Look in C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Cites and Directories Files and Directories Exact Search Name In Folder Size Date modified	
Look in C:USers\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles Change Search subfolders Kind Type Pattern Files and Directories Exact Search Name In Folder Size Date modified SpreadSheet_05.xlsx OB/20/2019 14:31 Items per page 50 Page 1/1	incel Help

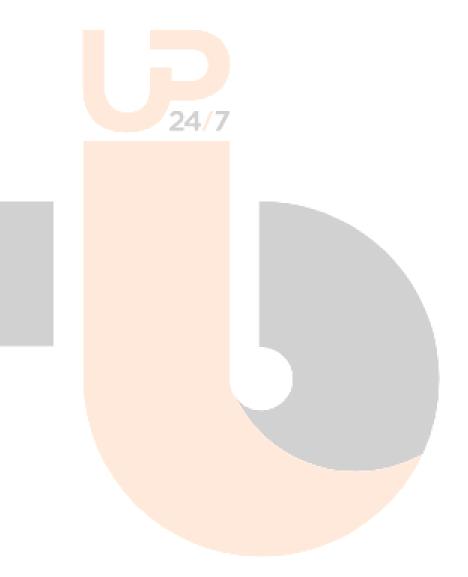
#### Explanation:

All files and directories under <u>C:\Users\Administrator\Documents\TestFiles</u> that has the pattern that has the exact pattern 'SpreadSheet\_05.xlsx' with match case set to true will be included upon performing search.

As you can see on the screen shot above, the result panel contains the Name of the files and directories, Directory which are indicated In-Folder column, Size, and Date Modified.



The restore filter setting includes the Search subfolder and Match case set to true. This means that the filter will include all available subfolders in \TestFiles upon searching. And it will strictly search only the specified pattern and case which starts with 'SpreadSheet\_05.xlsx'.



280





# Appendix C: Batch Files

Below is the list of batch files which can be used as an alternative way to run the Advanced Client (B247PRO).

- RunCB.bat
- RunConfigurator.bat
- ListBackupSet.bat
- RunBackupSet.bat
- ListBackupJob.bat
- Restore.bat
- Decrypt.bat
- RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat

## RunCB.bat

281

This allows the user to open the Advanced Client (B247PRO) without clicking the Advanced Client (B247PRO) icon.

On the command prompt (cmd), export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad RunCB.bat

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

• SETTING\_HOME – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"

 DEBUG\_MODE – this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when opening the Advanced Client (B247PRO) application.

> e.g. SET DEBU<mark>G\_MODE="--debug"</mark> or SET DEBUG\_MODE=""

```
@ECHO OFF
REM # You can use this batch to run the backup client application
REM ----- SETTING HOME
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
          _____
SET SETTING HOME=""
REM ----- DEBUG MODE
REM | Enable/Disable debug mode
REM | e.g. SET DEBUG MODE="--debug"
REM | or SET DEBUG MODE=""
```



```
REM -----
                       _____
SET DEBUG MODE=""
SET EXE DIR=%CD%
SET APP HOME=..
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X86"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddra<mark>w -</mark>Dsun.<mark>nio.PageA</mark>lignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB PAT<mark>H=</mark>X64"
  SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
SET PATH=%APP HOME<mark>%\bin\%DEP LIB PAT</mark>H%;%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
ECHO -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING H<mark>OME=<mark>%SETTING HOME</mark>%</mark>
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JA<mark>VA HOME</mark>%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAV<mark>A EXE</mark>%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH<mark>=%JAVA LIB PATH%</mark>
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA L<mark>IB PATH* -cp *CLAS</mark>SPATH* *JAVA OPTS* Gui *DEBUG MODE*
%APP HOME% %SETTING HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD "%EXE DIR%"
IF "%APP HOME%"=="..." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

Once the parameters are configured, save the changes, and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *RunCB.bat*.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>RunCB.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

SETTING_HOME=""

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
```

282



JAVA\_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA\_LIB\_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\ Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\ System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m-Dsun.java 2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio. PageAlignDi rectMemory=true Gui "" .. "" 24/7

If the debug mode is ENABLED, more technical information will be displayed for troubleshooting purposes.

purposes.				
C:\Program Files\Advanced Cla	ient (B247PRO)\bin>RunCB.bat			
-				
APP_HOME=				
SETTING_HOME=""				
JAVA_HOME=\jvm				
JAVA_EXE=\jvm\bi <mark>n\bJW.exe</mark>				
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m	-XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.			
noddraw -Dsun.nio. <mark>PageAlignD</mark>	<mark>irectMem</mark> ory=true			
JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.	.path=\bin PATH=\bin\X64;\jvm\bin;			
\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x8	86)\Common Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:			
\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C:\Windows				
\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL				
Server\ClientSDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft				
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL				
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL				
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Prog	ram Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=\bin;			
\bin\cb.jar				
-				
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -				
Djava.library.path=\bin -cp\bin;\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -				
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -				
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Gui "debug" ""				
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client				
(B247PRO)/bin//bin/asm-3.1.jar to classpathOK				
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client				
(B247PRO)/bin//bin/bcmail-jdk15on-1.51.jar to classpath OK				
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Fil	les/Advanced Client			
(B247PRO)/bin//bin/bcpkix-j	jdk15on-1.51.jar to classpath OK			



```
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/bcprov-jdk15on-151.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/cab-parser-2.9.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/cab-parser-dorkbox-util-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/cabinet-maker-1.0.0.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/commons-codec-1.6.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/commons-io-2.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/commons-logging-1.1.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>og</mark>ram%20<mark>Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/commons-net-3.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Fi</mark>les/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/dom4j-1.6.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-1.7.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-3.0.3.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/dropbox-core-sdk-3.0.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/fluent-hc-4.3.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/forms-1.3.0.jar to classpath... OK
Adding file:/C<mark>:/Pr</mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-api-client-1.19.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-api-client-jackson2-1.19.1.jar to
classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-api-services-drive-v2-rev158-1.19.1.jar to
classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-http-client-1.19.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-http-client-jackson2-1.19.0.jar to
classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/google-oauth-client-1.19.0.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/httpclient-4.3.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/httpclient-cache-4.3.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/httpcore-4.3.2.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/httpmime-4.3.5.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-annotations-2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
```



```
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-annotations-2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-core-2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-core-2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-core-asl-1.9.13.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-databind-2.2.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-databind-2.7.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-jaxrs-1.9.2.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-mapper-asl-1.9.13.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jackson-xc-1.9.2.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/java-xmlbuilder-0.4.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/javax.mail.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jcifs-1.3.18.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jdokan-20170627.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jdom-1.1.3.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jersey-apache-client4-1.18.1.jar to classpath ...
OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jersey-bundle-1.18.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jersey-multipart-1.18.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jettison-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jsch-0.1.50.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jsch-0.1.54.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/json simple-1.1.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/jsr305-1.3.9.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/log4j-1.2.17.jar to classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-api-0.4.6.jar to
classpath ... OK
Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client
(B247PRO)/bin/../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-1.0.0.jar to
classpath ... OK
```



Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-6.0.0.1.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/microsoft-windowsazure-storage-sdk-6.0.0.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/mysql-connector-java-5.0.8-bin.jar to classpath ... ΟK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/mysql-connector-java-5.1.46-bin.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/ojdbc6.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/org.json-20150730.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Fi</mark>les/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/servlet-api.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/sinetfactory.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client (B247PRO)/bin/../bin/yavijava.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/charsets.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/jce.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C<mark>:/Pr</mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/jfxswt.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C<mark>:/Pr</mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/jsse.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/management-agent.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Pr<mark>ogram%20Files/Adva</mark>nced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/resources.jar to classpath ... OK Adding file:/C:/Program%20Files/Advanced Client (B247PRO)/jvm/lib/rt.jar to classpath ... OK

Eventually, the Advanced Client (B247PRO) login screen will be displayed.



English
- right -
Login
Login name
MobileUser
Password
Save password
Show advanced option OK





# RunConfigurator.bat

This allows the user to run the Advanced Client (B247PRO) through *cmd*. Export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad
RunConfigurator.bat
```

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>

Configure the following parameters:

• SETTING\_HOME – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"

 DEBUG\_MODE – this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when opening the Advanced Client (B247PRO) application.

> e.g. SET DEBUG\_MODE="--debug" or SET DEBUG\_MODE=""

```
@ECHO OFF
REM # You can use this batch to run the backup client application
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
SET SETTING HOME=""
REM ----- DEBUG MODE
REM | Enable/Disable debug mode
REM | e.g. SET DEBUG MODE="--debug"
REM | or SET DEBUG MODE=""
REM ______
SET DEBUG MODE=""
SET APP HOME=..
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X86"
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB_PATH=X64"
)
SET PATH=%APP HOME%\bin\%DEP LIB PATH%;%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
```



```
ЕСНО -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME=%SETTING HOME%
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JAVA HOME%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH=%JAVA LIB PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA LIB PATH* -cp *CLASSPATH* *JAVA OPTS* Gui --config
%DEBUG MODE% %APP HOME% %SETTING HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD "%APP HOME%"
IF "%APP HOME%"=="..." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *RunConfigurator.bat*. The Advanced Client (B247PRO) login menu will be displayed.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>RunConfigurator.bat
APP HOME=..
SETTING HOME=""
JAVA HOME=..\jvm
JAVA EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin
PATH=..\bin\X64;..\<mark>jvm\bin;..\jvm\bin;C:\Pr</mark>ogram Files (x86)\Common
Files\Oracle\Java\ja<mark>vapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:</mark>\Windows;<mark>C</mark>:\Windows\Sys
tem32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86) \Microsoft SQL Server \120 \Tools \Binn \;C: \Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Gui --config
"" ... ""
Config file found
```



Login Menu				
(1). Login				
(2). Change Network Settings				
(3). Forgot Password				
(4). Quit				
Your Choice:				

If you want to modify the network settings before logging in, select option (2) from the login menu.

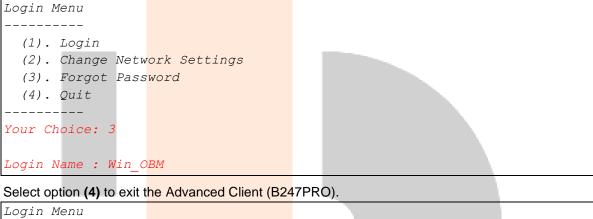


Otherwise, select option **(1)**. Input your login name and password to log in. After a successful login, the Advanced Client (B247PRO) main menu will be displayed.



Your profile has been downloaded and updated. Main Menu ------(1). List Backup Sets (2). Delete Backup Set (3). Export Backup Set Settings to XML (4). Import Backup Set Settings from XML (5). Generate new Backup Set Settings Template (6). Change Language [English] (7). Update Profile Settings (8). Quit ------Your Choice:

If the password is forgotten, choose (3) on the login menu and input your login name. A link will be sent to the email you provided in the B247CBS server to reset the user account password.







## ListBackupSet.bat

This allows the user to see the list of existing backup set/s under the backup account. Enter *ListBackupSet.bat* to display the list of available backup sets with their backup set ID.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>ListBackupSet.bat
APP HOME=..
SETTING HOME=
JAVA HOME=..\jvm
JAVA EXE=...\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=.. \bin PATH=.. \jvm\bin;C: \Program
Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:
\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell
\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client
SDK\ODBC\110\Tools<mark>\Binn\;C:\Program</mark> Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\
Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\DTS
\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
Listing all backup sets under this backup account ...
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path<mark>=..\bin -cp..\bin;</mark>..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -
Dsun.java2d.noddra<mark>w -Dsun.nio.PageAlig</mark>nDirectMemory=true
ListBackupSet ..
BackupSet Name= Data Backup, ID= 1562897045523
BackupSet Name= File Backup, ID= 1561974801639
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>PAUSE
Press any key to continue . . .
```



### RunBackupSet.bat

This allows the user to run a backup. Export the batch file to a text editor using the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad RunBackupSet.bat
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>
```

Make sure that the following parameters are set accordingly:

• **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to run. There are two (2) options to specify the backup set; using the *backup set name* or the *backup set ID*. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET="FileBackupSet-1" or SET BACKUP\_SET="1119083740107"

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET="") A / 7

If having multiple backup sets, you must specify which backup set you would like to be run.

 BACKUP\_DESTS – this is the destination(s) of the backup set which you will run. There are two (2) options to specify the destination; using the *destination name* or the *destination ID*. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

> e.g. SET BACKUP\_DEST="Local-1" or SET BACKUP\_DEST="1119083740107"

Multiple destinations can be specified in a comma-separated format, or you can indicate "ALL" to run a backup for all destinations.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_DESTS="Destination-1,Destination-2" or SET BACKUP\_DESTS="ALL"

 BACKUP\_TYPE – this is the backup set type. This does not need to be changed if backing up a file backup set.

Options available: FILE/DATABASE/DIFFERENTIAL/LOG

e.g. SET BACK <mark>UP_TYPE="FILE"</mark>	for file backup
or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"	for Full database backup
or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"	for Differential database backup
or SET BACKUP_TY <mark>PE="LOG"</mark>	for Log database backup

For MSExchange 2010 BackupSet:

e.g. SET BACKUP_TYPE="DATABASE"	for Full database backup
or SET BACKUP_TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL"	for Differential database backup
or SET BACKUP_TYPE="LOG"	for Incremental database backup
or SET BACKUP_TYPE="COPY"	for Copy database backup

 SETTING\_HOME – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"



- **DELTA\_MODE** this is used to set the In-File Delta mode when running a backup.
  - e.g. SET DELTA\_MODE="//" for Incremental In-file delta backup
  - or SET DELTA\_MODE="D" for Differential In-file delta backup
  - or SET DELTA\_MODE="F" for Full File backup
  - or SET DELTA\_MODE="" for using backup set in-file delta setting
- **CLEANUP\_MODE** same as the Retention Policy job and space freeing up, this parameter is used to remove obsolete files from your backup destinations after a backup has been run.

Options available: ENABLE-CLEANUP/DISABLE-CLEANUP

- e.g. SET CLEANUP\_MODE="ENABLE-CLEANUP" or SET CLEANUP\_MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP"
- DEBUG\_MODE this parameter is used to enable or disable the debug mode when there is a backup job running.

Options available: ENABLE-DEBUG/DISABLE-DEBUG

e.g. SET DEBUG\_MODE="ENABLE-DEBUG" or SET DEBUG\_MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG"

```
@ECHO OFF
REM # You can use <mark>this batch to run </mark>any of your backup sets from the
REM # command line<mark>. Just customize t</mark>he "User Defined Section" below with
REM # your values for your backup action.
REM -----BACKUP SET ------
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run.
REM | If backup se<mark>t name is not in E</mark>nglish, please use ID instead.
REM | e.g. SET BAC<mark>KUP SET="111908374</mark>0107"
REM | or SET BACKUP SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM ------
SET BACKUP SET=""
REM -------BACKUP DESTS ------
REM | The list of name or ID of the backup destinations that you want to
REM | run. If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID
REM | instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP DESTS="1740107119083"
REM | or SET BACKUP DESTS="Destination-1,Destination-2"
REM | Or SET BACKUP DESTS="ALL"
REM |
REM | You can specify multiple destinations in comma-separated format,
REM | or use "ALL" to run backup for all destinations.
REM ------
                                       _____
SET BACKUP DESTS="ALL"
REM ----- BACKUP TYPE -----
REM | Set backup type. You don't need to change this if you are backing
```



REM | up a file back set. REM | Options available: FILE/DATABASE/DIFFERENTIAL/LOG REM | e.g. SET BACKUP\_TYPE="FILE"for file backupREM | or SET BACKUP\_TYPE="DATABASE"for Full database backup REM | or SET BACKUP TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL" for Differential database REM | backup or SET BACKUP TYPE="LOG" for Log database backup REM | REM | For MSExchange 2010 BackupSet REM | e.q. SET BACKUP TYPE="DATABASE" for Full database backup REM | or SET BACKUP TYPE="DIFFERENTIAL" for Differential database REM | backup REM | Or SET BACKUP TYPE="LOG" for Incremental database REM |backup or SE<mark>T B</mark>ACKUP TYPE="COP</mark>Y" for Copy database REM |backup REM ------SET BACKUP TYPE="FILE" REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set. REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm" REM ------\_\_\_\_\_ SET SETTING HOME="" REM ------DELTA MODE ------REM | Set In-File Delta mode. REM | Options available: Incremental/Differential/Full (I/D/F) REM | e.g. SET DELTA MODE="I" for Incremental In-file delta backup REM | or SET DEL<mark>TA MODE="D" for</mark> Differential In-file delta backup REM | or SET DELTA MODE="F" for Full File backup REM | or SET DELTA MODE="" for using backup set in-file delta REM |setting SET DELTA MODE="" REM ----- CLEANUP MODE \_\_\_\_\_ REM | You can enable Cleanup mode to remove obsolete files from your REM | backup destinations after backup. REM | Options available: ENABLE-CLEANUP/DISABLE-CLEANUP REM | e.q. SET CLEANUP MODE="ENABLE-CLEANUP" REM | or SET CLEANUP MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP" SET CLEANUP MODE="DISABLE-CLEANUP" REM ----- DEBUG MODE -------REM | Set Debug mode. REM | Options available: ENABLE-DEBUG/DISABLE-DEBUG REM | e.g. SET DEBUG MODE="ENABLE-DEBUG" REM | or SET DEBUG MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG" REM -----SET DEBUG MODE="DISABLE-DEBUG" SET APP HOME=.. SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME%\jvm SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%



```
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X86"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X64"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP HOME%\bin\%DEP LIB PATH%;%PATH%
ECHO -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME= %SETTING HOME *
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JAVA HOME%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH=%JAVA LIB PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
ECHO Running Backup Set - '%BACKUP SET%' ...
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA L<mark>IB PATH* -cp *CLAS</mark>SPATH* *JAVA OPTS* RunBackupSet
$APP HOME$ $BACKUP SET$ $BACKUP DESTS$ $BACKUP TYPE$ $SETTING HOME$
%DELTA MODE% %CLEANUP MODE% %DEBUG MODE%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP HOME %
IF "%APP HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

#### NOTE

If some parameters are not configured, the backup job will run with the default backup settings.

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to cmd and enter RunBackupSet.bat.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>RunBackupSet.bat

-

APP_HOME=..

SETTING_HOME=""

JAVA_HOME=..\jvm

JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe

JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -

Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true

JAVA_LIB_PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program Files\Advanced

Client (B247PRO)\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common

Files\Oracle\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\

System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program

Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program

Files (x86)\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
```

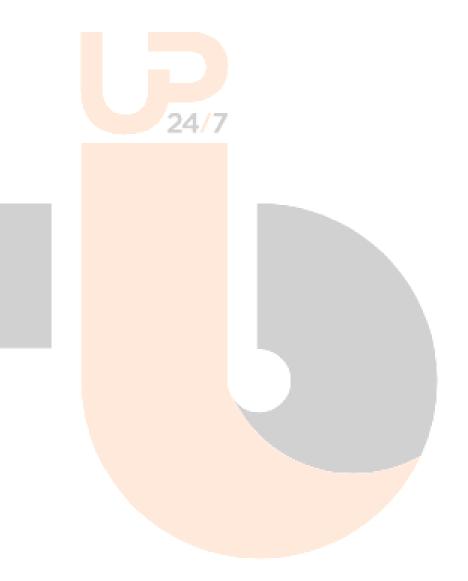


```
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
Running Backup Set - '""' ...
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true RunBackupSet .. "" "ALL" "FILE" ""
"" "DISABLE-CLEANUP" "DISABLE-DEBUG"
[2019/07/12 12:50:20] [info] [-] Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO)
v8.2.1.18 ]
[2019/07/12 12:50:20] [info] [-] Saving encrypted backup set encryption
keys to server...
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Start Backup ... [In-File
Delta: Incremental]
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Using Temporary Directory
C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1562897045523\OBS@1562897364604
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [-] Start running pre-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [-] Finished running pre-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Downloading server file
list...
[2019/07/12 12:50:22] [info] [1562897364604] Downloading server file
list... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:23] [info] [1562897364604] Reading backup source from
hard disk ...
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Getting all files which
have been moved ...
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Getting all files which
have been moved... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Reading backup source from
hard disk... Completed
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Directories = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total New Links = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Updated Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Attributes Changed
Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Directories =
0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Deleted Links = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:25] [info] [1562897364604] Total Moved Files = 0
[2019/07/12 12:50:26] [info] [1562897364604] Saving encrypted backup
file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination B247CBS...
[2019/07/12 12:50:26] [info] [1562897364604] Saving encrypted backup
file index to 1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-12-50-20 at destination
B247CBS...
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [-] Start running post-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [-] Finished running post-commands
[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [1562897364604] Deleting temporary file
C:\Users\Administrator\temp\1562897045523\OBS@1562897364604
```



[2019/07/12 12:50:27] [info] [1562897364604] Backup Completed Successfully

Press any key to continue . . .



298





### ListBackupJob.bat

299

This allows the user to display the list of backup jobs under a specific backup set. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad ListBackupJob.bat
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

• **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to be displayed. There are two (2) ways to specify the backup set; using the *backup set name* or the *backup set ID*. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

```
e.g. SET BACKUP_SET="FileBackupSet-1"
or SET BACKUP_SET="1119083740107"
```

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET=""

• **BACKUP\_DEST** – this is the destination of the backup set which you would like to be displayed. There are two (2) ways to specify the backup destination; using the *destination name* or the *destination ID*. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_DEST="Local-1" or SET BACKUP\_DEST="1119083740107"

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup destination.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_DEST=""

```
@ECHO OFF
REM # You can use this batch to list all backup jobs which ran under
                                                 #
REM # this backup set.
REM ----- BACKUP SET ------
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run
REM | If backup set nam<mark>e is not in English, please use Ba</mark>ckupSetID
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP SET<mark>="1119083740107"</mark>
REM | or SET BACKUP SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM -----
SET BACKUP SET="File Backup"
REM ----- BACKUP DEST -----
REM | The name or ID of the destination that you want to list
REM | If destination name is not in English, please use DestinationID
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP DEST="1119083740107"
REM | or SET BACKUP DEST="B247CBS"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination.
REM _____
```



```
SET BACKUP DEST=""
REM #
                  SCRIPT
                                          USAGE
REM # Input Arguments will overwrite the above settings
REM # defined in 'User Defined Section'.
IF NOT %1.==. SET BACKUP SET=%1
IF NOT %2.==. SET BACKUP DEST=%2
SET APP HOME= ...
SET SETTING HOME=
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms<mark>12</mark>8m -Xm<mark>x768m -Dsu</mark>n.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDire
ctMemory=true
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOM<mark>E%\bin;%PATH%</mark>
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
ECHO -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME=<mark>%SETTING HOME%</mark>
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JA<mark>VA HOME</mark>%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH<mark>=%JAVA LIB PATH%</mark>
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH<mark>=%CL<mark>ASSPATH</mark>%</mark>
ECHO -
ECHO Listing all b<mark>ackup jobs for Bac</mark>kup Set - '%BACKUP SET%' ...
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA L<mark>IB PATH* -cp *CLASSP</mark>ATH* *JAVA OPTS* ListBackupJob --
app-home=%APP HOME<mark>% --backup-set=%BACKU</mark>P SET% --backup-
dest=%BACKUP DEST% --setting-home=%SETTING HOME%
PAUSE
```

#### NOTE

You can only select one (1) backup set and one (1) destination at a time.

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to *cmd* and enter *ListBackupJob.bat*. The list of backup jobs under the specified backup set will be displayed.

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>ListBackupJob.bat -APP\_HOME=.. SETTING\_HOME= JAVA\_HOME=..\jvm



```
JAVA_EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
```

```
JAVA_OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
```

Files\PuTTY\CLASSP<mark>ATH</mark>=..\bin;..\b<mark>in\</mark>cb.jar

-

Listing all backup jobs for Backup Set - '"File Backup"' ...

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx768m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true ListBackupJob --app-home=.. -backup-set="File Backup" --backup-dest="" --setting-home=

#### File Backup [15622<mark>20462692]</mark>

2019-07-05-11-31-41

2019-07-04-20-00-0<mark>0</mark>

#### 2019-07-04-14-08-1<mark>3</mark>

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>PAUSE

Press any key to c<mark>ontinue . . .</mark>



### Restore.bat

This allows the user to restore backed up data. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad Restore.bat
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

• **BACKUP\_SET** – this is the backup set which you would like to restore. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET="FileBackupSet-1" or SET BACKUP\_SET="1119083740107"

- DESTINATION this is the destination where you want to restore the backed up data from.
   If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.
  - e.g. SET DESTINATION="Local-1"
  - or SET DESTINATION="1119083740107"

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup destination.

e.g. SET DESTINATION=""

• **RESTORE\_TO** – this is the location where the files will be restored.

e.g. SET RESTORE\_TO=" C:\Temp"

RESTORE\_FROM – this is the selected file or directory on the backup server which you
would like to restore.

e.g. SET RESTORE\_FROM="C:\Users"

- POINT\_IN\_TIME this is the point-in-time snapshot (of a successful backup) that you want to restore from the backup server. Use "Current" for the latest backup snapshot. You can retrieve the point in time by using the ListBackupJob.bat.
  - e.g. SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13" or SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="Current"
- RESTORE\_PERMISSION set this to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions. Otherwise, indicate "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions.

e.g. SET RESTORE\_PERMISSION="N"

• **SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY** – set this to "Y" if you want to skip restore file with an invalid key. Set this to "N" if you want to prompt user to input the correct key.

e.g. SET SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY="N"

• SYNC\_OPTION – set this to "Y" if you want to enable the sync option. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option. Leave this blank if you want to prompt user for a selection.



e.g. SET SYNC\_OPTION="N"

• **REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE** – set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same filename. Set this to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the same filename. Leave this blank if you want to prompt user for a selection.

e.g. SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE="--all"

• SETTING\_HOME – this is the directory to your setting home. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"

FILTER – this parameter is used to filter the files that you want to restore.

e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"

• **TEMP\_DIR** – this is the directory where you would like to store the restore files temporarily.

e.g. SET TEMP\_DIR="C:\Temp"

• VERIFY\_CHKSUM – set this to "Y" if you want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during restore. Otherwise, set this to "N" if you do NOT want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during restore.

#### e.g. SET VERIFY\_CHKSUM="N"

#### @ECHO OFF REM # You can use this batch file to restore backup files using command-REM # line. Just customize the "User Define Section" below with values REM # for your restore action. REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to restore. REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use ID instead. REM | e.g. SET BACKU<mark>P SET="1119083740107"</mark> REM | or SET BACKUP SET="FileBackupSet-1" REM | REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set. REM ------SET BACKUP SET="" REM ----- DESTINATION -----REM | The name or ID of the backup destination that you want to restore REM | from. REM | If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID REM | instead. REM | e.g. SET DESTINATION="1740107119083" REM | or SET DESTINATION="Destination-1" REM | REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination. REM -----SET DESTINATION=""



```
REM ----- RESTORE TO -----
REM | Directory to where you want files to be restored
REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | set to "" to restore files to original location
REM | e.g. SET RESTORE_TO="C:\Temp"
REM ------
SET RESTORE TO="C:\Temp"
REM ----- RESTORE FROM ------
REM | File/Directory on the backup server that you would like to restore
REM | e.g. SET RESTORE FROM="C:\Data"
REM ------
SET RESTORE FROM="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
REM ------ POINT IN TIME -------
REM | The point-in-time snapshot (successful backup) that you want to
REM | restore from the backup server.
REM | Use "Current" for the latest backup
REM | snapshot e.g<mark>. SET POINT</mark> IN TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13"
REM | or SET POINT IN TIME="Current"
REM |
REM | You can retr<mark>ieve the point in</mark> time by using the ListBackupJob.bat
REM ______
SET POINT IN TIME="Current"
REM ----PERMISSION ------ RESTORE PERMISSION ------
REM | set to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions
SET RESTORE PERMISSION="N"
REM | set to "Y" if you want to skip restore file with invalid key
REM | set to "N" if you want to prompt user to input a correct key
SET SKIP INVALID KEY="N"
REM ----- SYNC OPTION
REM | Delete extra files
REM | set to "Y" if you want to enable sync option
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option
REM | set to "" to prompt for selection
SET SYNC OPTION="N"
REM | set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same
REM | filename set to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the same
REM | filename set to "" to prompt for selection
REM ------
SET REPLACE EXISTING FILE="--all"
REM ----- SETTING HOME -----
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
              ------
SET SETTING HOME=""
REM OPTION:
               ----- FILTER ------
REM -----
```



```
REM | Filter out what files you want to restore
REM | -Pattern=xxx-Type=yyy-Target=zzz
REM | where xxx is the filter pattern,
REM | yyy is the filter type, which can be one of the following:
           [exact | exactMatchCase | contains | containsMatchCase|
REM |
REM |
             startWith | startWithMatchCase | endWith |
REM |endWithMatchCase] |
REM | zzz is the filter target, which can be one of the following:
REM |
           [toFile | toFileDir | toDir]
rem I
REM | e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"
REM ------
SET FILTER=""
REM ----- TEMP DIR -----
REM | Directory to where you want to store restore files temporarily
REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | set to "" to use the temporary directory in the backup set
REM | e.g. SET TEMP DIR="C:\Temp"
SET TEMP DIR=""
REM | set to "Y" if you want to verify in-file delta file checksum
REM | during restore
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to verify in-file delta file
REM | checksum during restore
_____
SET VERIFY CHKSUM="N"
SET APP HOME=..
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME% jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH<mark>=X86"</mark>
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X64"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP HOME%\bin\%DEP LIB PATH%;%PATH%
ECHO -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME=%SETTING HOME%
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JAVA HOME%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH=%JAVA LIB PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
```



```
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%

ECHO -

@ECHO ON

%JAVA_EXE% %JAVA_LIB_PATH% -cp %CLASSPATH% %JAVA_OPTS% Restore --

to=%RESTORE_TO% --from=%RESTORE_FROM% --backup-set=%BACKUP_SET% --

backup-dest=%DESTINATION% %REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE% --date=%POINT_IN_TIME%

--set-permission=%RESTORE_PERMISSION% --skip-invalid-

key=%SKIP_INVALID_KEY% --sync=%SYNC_OPTION% --filter=%FILTER% --temp-

dir=%TEMP_DIR% --verify-delta-file-chksum=%VERIFY_CHKSUM% --app-

home=%APP_HOME% --setting-home=%SETTING_HOME%

@ECHO OFF

CD %APP_HOME%

IF "%APP_HOME%"==".." PAUSE

@ECHO ON
```

NOTE

If some parameters are not set, the restore job will run with the default restore settings.

#### Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to cmd and enter Restore.bat.

```
C:\Program Files\A<mark>dvanced Client (B2</mark>47PRO)\bin>Restore.bat
APP HOME=..
SETTING HOME=""
JAVA HOME=..\jvm
JAVA EXE=..\jvm\bi<mark>n\bJW.exe</mark>
JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\binPATH=C:\Program Files\Advanced
Client (B247PRO)
\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle\
Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;
C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files
(x86) \Microsoft SQL Server \120 \Tools \Binn \;C: \Program Files \Microsoft
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..
\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true Restore --to="C:\Temp" --
from="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup" --backup-set="" --
```



```
backup-dest="" "--all" --date="Current"--set-permission="N" --skip-
invalid-key="N" --sync="N" --filter="" --temp-dir="" --verify-delta-
file-chksum="N" --app-home=.. --setting-home=""
Filter Pattern not set, filter would not apply to restore
Temporary directory not set, use the temporary directory in the backup
set
[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8.2.1.18 ]
[2019-07-12 11:52:03] OS: Windows Server 2012 R2 (w2k16R2-std); CPU
Model: VMware-Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5520 @ 2.27GHz,Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU
E5520 @2.27GHz; Number of Proces<mark>sor</mark>s: 4; Heap Size: 32.3MB (Current) /
1.8GB (Maximum); Physical Memory: 726.9MB (Free) / 4GB (Total)
[2019-07-12 11:52:03] start, Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO)
v8.2.1.18 ],0,0,0,,0,0 _______
[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Initializing decrypt action...
[2019-07-12 11:52:03] Initializing decrypt action... Completed
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory... "C:\Temp\C "
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory... "C:\Temp\C \Users"
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator"
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop"
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Creating new directory...
"C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Downloading...
"C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Sample file.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 11:52:04] Downloading...
"C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Text File.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 11:52:05] file,C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Sample file.txt,0,0,1562897245044,,1562903525530,1562903525531
[2019-07-12 11:52:05] file,C:\Temp\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Text File.txt,0,0,1562897254708,,1562903525531,1562903525531
[2019-07-12 11:52:06] Restore Completed Successfully
[2019-07-12 11:52:06] end, RESTORE STOP SUCCESS, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0
Press any key to continue . . .
```



### Decrypt.bat

This allows the user to restore raw data. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad Decrypt.bat
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>
```

Configure the following parameters:

• **SOURCE\_DIR** – this is the path of the folder which contains the backed up files that you want to decrypt.

e.g. SOURCE\_DIR="C:\john\backupdata\1498444438340\blocks"

- **ENCRYPT\_KEY** this is the encryption key that was set for the backup set. You can leave this parameter blank if the backed up data is not encrypted.
  - e.g. ENCR<mark>YPT\_KEY="NjQAtHhBSy</mark>AVgfFkaFl=" e.g. ENCR<mark>YPT\_KEY=""</mark>
- **DECRYPT\_TO** this is the specified directory where the decrypted files will be stored.

e.g. SET DECRYPT\_TO=" C:\Temp"

• **DECRYPT\_FROM** – this is the file or directory on the backup data that you would like to decrypt.

e.g. SET DECRYPT\_TO="C:\Data"

- **POINT\_IN\_TIME** this is the point-in-time snapshot (of a successful backup) that you want to decrypt from the backed up data. Use "Current" for the latest backup snapshot. The point-in- time should be one of the directory names under SOURCE\_DIR.
  - e.g. SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13" or SET POINT\_IN\_TIME="Current"
- **RESTORE\_PERMISSION** set this to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions. Otherwise, indicate "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions.

e.g. SET RESTORE\_PERMISSION="N"

• **SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY** – set this to "Y" if you want to skip decrypt file with invalid key. Set this set to "N" if you want to prompt user to input a correct key.

e.g. SKIP\_INVALID\_KEY="Y"

 SYNC\_OPTION – set this to "Y" if you want to enable sync option. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option. Leave this parameter blank if you want to prompt user for selection.

e.g. SET SYNC\_OPTION="N"

e.g. SET SYNC\_OPTION=""



• **REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE** – set this to "--all" if you want to replace all existing file(s) of the same filename. Set this to "--none" if you want to skip all existing file(s) with the same filename. Leave this parameter blank if you want to prompt user for selection.

e.g. SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE="--all" e.g. SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE="--none" e.g. SET REPLACE\_EXISTING\_FILE=""

• SETTING\_HOME – this is the directory to your setting home. This is where the log files will be placed. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default.

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"

• **FILTER** – this parameter is used to filter the files that you want to decrypt.

e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"

• **TEMP\_DIR** – this is the directory where you would like to store the decrypt files temporarily.

e.g. SET TEMP\_DIR="C:\Temp"

• VERIFY\_CHKSUM – set this to "Y" if you want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during decrypt. Set this to "N" if you do NOT want to verify the in-file delta file checksum during decrypt.

#### e.g. SET VERIFY\_CHKSUM="N"

#### @ECHO OFF REM # You can use this batch file to decrypt backup files using command-REM # line. Just c<mark>ustomize the "User</mark> Define Section" below with values REM # for your dec<mark>rypt action.</mark> REM | The path to the [<backup set ID>/blocks] folder which contains REM | the backup files that you want to decrypt. REM | This folder sh<mark>ould be located under backup destination</mark> physically. REM | e.g. SET SOURCE DIR="C:\john\backupdata\1498444438340\blocks" REM | where directory "C:\john\backupdata" is path of local destination SET SOURCE DIR="C:\Program Files\B247CBS\user\Win\_OBM\1562897045523\blocks" REM ------ENCRYPT KEY -----REM | The encrypting key of the backup data. REM | e.g. SET ENCRYPT KEY="RU5DU11QVF9LRVk=" REM | REM | You can leave this parameter blank if backup data is not REM | encrypted. REM -----\_\_\_\_\_ SET ENCRYPT KEY="" REM ----- DECRYPT TO -----REM | Directory to where you want files to be decrypted REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path REM | e.g. SET DECRYPT TO="C:\Temp"



REM -----\_\_\_\_\_ SET DECRYPT TO="C:\Data" REM ----- DECRYPT FROM ------REM | File/Directory on the backup data that you would like to decrypt REM | e.g. SET DECRYPT FROM="C:\Data" REM ------\_\_\_\_\_ SET DECRYPT FROM="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup" REM ----- POINT IN\_TIME -----REM | The point-in-time snapshot (successful backup) that you want to REM | decrypt from the backup data. Use "Current" for the latest backup REM | snapshot REM | e.g. SET POINT IN TIME="2006-10-04-12-57-13" REM | or SET POINT IN TIME="Current" REM | REM | The point in time sh<mark>ould be on</mark>e of the directory name under REM | SOURCE DIR unless you want to decrypt latest backup snapshot. REM ------SET POINT\_IN TIME="Current" REM ----- RESTORE PERMISSION -----REM | set to "Y" if you want to restore file permissions REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to restore file permissions SET RESTORE PERMISSION="N" REM | set to "Y" i<mark>f you want to skip</mark> decrypt file with invalid key REM | set to "N" i<mark>f you want to prom</mark>pt to input a correct key SET SKIP INVALID KEY="Y" REM ----SYNC OPTION ------REM | Delete extra files REM | set to "Y" if you want to enable sync option REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to enable sync option REM | set to "" to prompt for selection REM ------\_\_\_\_\_ SET SYNC OPTION="N" REM ------ REPLACE EXISTING FILE ------REM | set to "--all" to replace all existing file(s) of the same REM | filename set to "--none" to skip all existing file(s) with the REM | same filename set to "" to prompt for selection SET REPLACE EXISTING FILE="--all" REM ------ SETTING HOME ------REM | Directory to your setting home. Log files will be located inside. REM | Default to "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set. REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm" REM -----SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\Administrator\.obm" REM OPTION: REM -----FILTER ------REM | Filter out what files you want to decrypt REM | -Pattern=xxx-Type=yyy-Target=zzz REM | where xxx is the filter pattern, REM | yyy is the filter type, whice can be one of the following:



```
REM |
            [exact | exactMatchCase | contains | containsMatchCase|
             startWith | startWithMatchCase | endWith |
REM |
REM |
           endWithMatchCase]
         zzz is the filter target, which can be one of the following:
REM |
            [toFile | toFileDir | toDir]
REM |
REM |
REM | e.g. SET FILTER="-Pattern=.txt-Type=exact-Target=toFile"
REM -----
         _____
SET FILTER=""
REM ----- TEMP DIR -----
REM | Directory to where you want to store decrypt files temporarily
REM | Use "\\\\" instead of "\\" when you specify a UNC path
REM | e.g. SET TEMP DIR="C:\Temp"
REM -------
SET TEMP DIR="C:\Temp"
REM ----- VERIFY CHKSUM ------
REM | set to "Y" if you want to verify in-file delta file checksum
REM | during decrypt
REM | set to "N" if you do NOT want to verify in-file delta file
REM | checksum during decrypt
REM _____
                          _____
SET VERIFY CHKSUM="N"
SET APP HOME=..
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME% jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PAT<mark>H=X86"</mark>
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH<mark>=X64"</mark>
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP HOME%\bin\%DEP LIB PATH%;%PATH%
ECHO -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME=%SETTING HOME%
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JAVA HOME%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH=%JAVA LIB PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ЕСНО -
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA LIB PATH* -cp *CLASSPATH* *JAVA OPTS* Decrypt --
to=%DECRYPT TO% --from=%DECRYPT FROM% --source-dir=%SOURCE DIR% --
```



```
key=%ENCRYPT_KEY% %REPLACE_EXISTING_FILE% --date=%POINT_IN_TIME% --set-
permission=%RESTORE_PERMISSION% --skip-invalid-key=%SKIP_INVALID_KEY% --
sync=%SYNC_OPTION% --filter=%FILTER% --temp-dir=%TEMP_DIR% --verify-
delta-file-chksum=%VERIFY_CHKSUM% --app-home=%APP_HOME% --setting-
home=%SETTING_HOME%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP_HOME%
IF "%APP_HOME%"=="..." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

Save the changes and close the text editor. On the *cmd*, enter *Decrypt.bat*. When asked if you want to input the encrypting key, select '1' (Yes). Enter the correct encryption key to continue.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>Decrypt.bat
APP HOME=..
SETTING HOME="C:\U<mark>ser</mark>s\Administrator\.obm"
JAVA HOME=..\jvm
JAVA EXE=..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAl</mark>ignDirectMemory=true
JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program Files\Advanced
Client (B247PRO) \bin
\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common
Files\Oracle\Java\<mark>javapath;C:\Window</mark>s\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\
System32\Wbem;C:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files (x86)\Micros<mark>oft SQL Server\120</mark>\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\Microsoft SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\120\DTS\
Binn\;C:\Program Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -
Djava.library.path<mark>=..\bin -cp ..\bin;.</mark>\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -
XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -
Dsun.nio.PageAlignDi<mark>rectMemory=true Decryp</mark>t --to="C:\Data" --
from="C:\Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup" --source-
dir="C:\Program Files\B247CBS\user\Win OBM\1562897045523\blocks" --
key="" "--all" --date="C<mark>urrent" --set-permission="N" --s</mark>kip-invalid-
key="Y" --sync="N" --filter="" --temp-dir="C:\Temp" --verify-delta-file-
chksum="N" --app-home=.. --setting-home="C:\Users\Administrator\.obm"
Filter Pattern not set, filter would not apply to decrypt
(C:\Program Files\Backup247
B247CBS\user\Win OBM\1562897045523\blocks\index-
s0.j00.100.16be3f1a078.cgz)
Please input the Encrypting Key.
Want to input encrypting key?
1.YES
         2.CANCEL >>1
[2019-07-12 10:27:23] Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8.2.1.18 ]
```

312



```
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] OS: Windows Server 2012 R2 (w2k16R2-std); CPU
Model: VMware-Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5520 @ 2.27GHz,Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU
E5520 @ 2.27GHz; Number of Processors: 4; Heap Size: 35.6MB (Current)
/ 1.8GB (Maximum); Physical Memory: 722.2MB (Free) / 4GB (Total)
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] start, Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO)
v8.2.1.18 ],0,0,0,,0,0
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] Initializing decrypt action...
[2019-07-12 10:27:25] Initializing decrypt action... Completed
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory... "C:\Data\C "
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory... "C:\Data\C \Users"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Creating new directory...
"C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup"
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Downloading...
"C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data backup\Sample file.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 10:27:26] Downloading...
"C:\Data\C \Users\<mark>Administrator\Desk</mark>top\Data backup\Text File.txt"
(Total 0 bytes)
[2019-07-12 10:27:27] file,C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Sample file<mark>.txt,0,0,156289724</mark>5044,,1562898447522,1562898447522
[2019-07-12 10:27:27] file,C:\Data\C \Users\Administrator\Desktop\Data
backup\Text File.txt,0,0,1562897254708,,1562898447522,1562898447522
```

#### [2019-07-12 10:27:28] Restore Completed Successfully

[2019-07-12 10:27:28] end, RESTORE\_STOP\_SUCCESS, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0

Press any key to continue . . .



# RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat

This allows the user to perform data integrity check to all available backup sets. Enter the following script to export the batch file to a text editor.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>notepad
RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat
```

C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>

To perform a data integrity check, the following parameters must be set first:

• **SETTING\_HOME** (*Optional*)- this is the directory to your setting home. This is where the log files will be located. If not set, the directory will be "C:\Users\USER\.obm" by default

e.g. SET SETTING\_HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"

 BACKUP\_SET – this is the backup set which you would like to run a data integrity check on. If the backup set name is not in English, use the backup set ID.

> e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET="FileBackupSet-1" or SET BACKUP\_SET="1119083740107"

You can leave this parameter blank if you only have one (1) backup set.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET=""

 BACKUP\_DEST – this is the destination of the backup set which you will run a data integrity check on. If the destination is not in English, use the destination ID.

> e.g. SET BACKUP\_DEST="Destination-1" or SET BACKUP\_DEST="1740107119083"

This parameter can be left blank if you have a single destination.

e.g. SET BACKUP\_DEST=""

This parameter will be ignored if the BACKUP\_SET is set to "ALL".

e.g. SET BACKUP\_SET="ALL"

CRC\_MODE – when enabled, a Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) will run during the data integrity check.

e.g. SET CRC\_MODE="ENABLE-CRC" SET CRC\_MODE="DISABLE-CRC"

@ECHO OFF

314



```
REM | Directory to your setting home. Default to
REM | "C:\Users\USER\.obm" when not set.
REM | e.g. SET SETTING HOME="C:\Users\John\.obm"
REM -----
               _____
SET SETTING HOME=""
REM ----- BACKUP SET -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup set that you want to run.
REM | If backup set name is not in English, please use ID instead.
REM | e.g. SET BACKUP SET="1119083740107"
REM | or SET BACKUP SET="FileBackupSet-1"
REM | You can use "ALL" to run data integrity check for all backup sets.
REM | i.e. SET BACKUP SET="ALL"
rem I
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 backup set.
REM ------
SET BACKUP SET="Data Backup"
REM ----- BACKUP DEST -----
REM | The name or ID of the backup destination that you want to run.
REM | If backup destination name is not in English, please use ID
REM | instead. e.g<mark>. SET BACKUP DEST=</mark>"1740107119083"
REM | or SET BACKUP DEST="Destination-1"
REM | You can use "ALL" to run data integrity check for all
REM | destinations. i.e. SET BACKUP DEST="ALL"
REM |
REM | You can leave this parameter blank if you have only 1 destination.
REM | Remark: This option is ignored if BACKUP SET="ALL"
SET BACKUP DEST=""
REM ------ CRC MODE ------
REM | You can run Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) during data integrity
REM | check
REM | Options available: ENABLE-CRC/DISABLE-CRC
REM | i.e. SET CRC MODE="ENABLE-CRC"
REM | or SET CRC MODE="DISABLE-CRC"
REM -----
                    -----
SET CRC MODE="DISABLE-CRC"
SET APP HOME=..
SET JAVA HOME=%APP HOME%\jvm
SET JAVA EXE=%JAVA HOME%\bin\bJW.exe
SET JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=%APP_HOME%\bin
SET PATH=%JAVA HOME%\bin;%PATH%
SET CLASSPATH=%APP HOME%\bin;%APP_HOME%\bin\cb.jar
IF "%PROCESSOR ARCHITECTURE%"=="x86" (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X86"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx768m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=512m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
) ELSE (
 SET "DEP LIB PATH=X64"
 SET JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
)
```



```
SET PATH=%CD%\%APP HOME%\bin\%DEP LIB PATH%;%PATH%
ЕСНО -
ECHO APP HOME=%APP HOME%
ECHO SETTING HOME=%SETTING HOME%
ECHO JAVA HOME=%JAVA HOME%
ECHO JAVA EXE=%JAVA EXE%
ECHO JAVA OPTS=%JAVA OPTS%
ECHO JAVA LIB PATH=%JAVA LIB PATH%
ECHO PATH=%PATH%
ECHO CLASSPATH=%CLASSPATH%
ECHO -
ECHO Running data integrity check for backup set - '%BACKUP SET%',
destination - '%BACKUP DEST%' ...
@ECHO ON
*JAVA EXE* *JAVA LIB PATH* -cp *CLASSPATH* *JAVA OPTS*
RunDataIntegrityCh<mark>eck %APP HOME% %SE</mark>TTING HOME% %BACKUP SET%
%BACKUP DEST% %CRC MODE% %REBUILD MODE%
@ECHO OFF
CD %APP HOME %
IF "%APP HOME%"==".." PAUSE
@ECHO ON
```

316

Save the changes and close the text editor. Proceed back to cmd and enter the following script.

```
C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>RunDataIntegrityCheck.bat
APP HOME=..
SETTING HOME=""
JAVA HOME=...\jvm
JAVA EXE=...\jvm\bin\bJW.exe
JAVA OPTS=-Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -
Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true
JAVA LIB PATH=-Djava.library.path=..\bin PATH=C:\Program Files\Advanced
Client (B247PRO)
\bin\..\bin\X64;..\jvm\bin;C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\Oracle
\Java\javapath;C:\Windows\system32;C:\Windows;C:\Windows\System32\Wbem;C
:\Windows\System32\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft
SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\110\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files
(x86) \Microsoft SQL Server \120 \Tools \Binn \;C: \Program Files \Microsoft
SQL Server\120\Tools\Binn\;C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL
Server\120\DTS\Binn\;C:\Program
Files\PuTTY\CLASSPATH=..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar
```



Running data integrity check for backup set - '"Data Backup"', destination - '""' ... C:\Program Files\Advanced Client (B247PRO)\bin>..\jvm\bin\bJW.exe -Djava.library.path=..\bin -cp ..\bin;..\bin\cb.jar -Xms128m -Xmx2048m -XX:MaxDirectMemorySize=1024m -Dsun.java2d.noddraw -Dsun.nio.PageAlignDirectMemory=true RunDataIntegrityCheck .. "" "Data Backup" "" "DISABLE-CRC" "DISABLE-REBUILD" [doInfo] Start [ Advanced Client (B247PRO) v8.2.1.18 ] [doStart] Start data integrity check on backup set "Data Backup(15628970455<mark>23)</mark>", "B<mark>247CBS(15</mark>62897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild index disabled [doDetail] Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destinatio<mark>n= "B247CBS</mark>" [doLogProgress] Start processing data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS" [doLogProgress] Browsing "/files/1562897045523" [doLogProgress] Browsing "1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-10-09-33" [doLogProgress] Browsing "1562897045523/blocks/2019-07-12-10-09-33/0" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "2019-07-12-10-09-33", "" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users/Administrator" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users/Administrator/Desktop" [doLogProgress] Processing Job "Current", "C:/Users/Administrator/Desktop/Data backup" [doLogProgress] Checking dangling backup file index entries... [doInfo] Existing statistics of backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS": Data area compressed size: 32B, Data area uncompressed size: OB, Data area file count: 2, Retention area compressed size: OB, Retention area uncompressed size: 0B, Retention area file count: 0 [doInfo] Recalculated statistics of backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS": Data area compressed size: 32B, Data area uncompressed size: OB, Data area file count: 2, Retention area compressed size: 0B, Retention area uncompressed size: 0B, Retention area file count: 0



[doInfo] The statistics of backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS" is correct.

[doLogProgress] Saving encrypted backup file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination B247CBS...

[doInfo] Saving encrypted backup file index to 1562897045523/blocks at destination B247CBS...

[doDetail] Data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS" is completed

[doLogProgress] Data integrity check on backup set= "Data Backup" destination= "B247CBS" is completed

[doEnd][INFO] Finished data integrity check on backup set "Data Backup(1562897045523)", "B247CBS(1562897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild index disabled

[doInfo] Completed data integrity check on backup set "Data Backup(1562897045523)", "B247CBS(1562897364604)", crc disabled, rebuild index disabled

Press any key to continue . . .



## Appendix D: Example Scenarios for the Reminder

### Windows Log Off

The following example shows when the user performs Windows Log off with the Reminder setting turned on.

1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows logoff.

Shut Dow	vn Windows
	What do you want the computer to do?
10	Log off
	Close programs and log off.
	OK Cancel Help

3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.

etting.			
🕚 B247PRO			×
Do you want to backup the followin	g BackupSet(s)?		Yes
Daily Backup Sample Backup Set			No
<ul> <li>Locking workstation</li> </ul>			
C Shutdown Computer	C Restart Compu	iter	
Do not backup and close automatic	ally in 3 sec		



#### **Windows Restart**

The following example shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on.

1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows restart.

Shut Down	n Windows		
	What do you want the computer to do?		
	Restart		
	Closes all open programs, shuts down Windows, and then starts Windows again.		
	OK Cancel Help		

3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.

3			
🕚 B247PRO			×
Do you want to backup the fol	lowing BackupSet(s)?	Yes	
Daily Backup Sample Backup Set		No	
Locking workstation			
C Shutdown Computer	Restart Comput	er	
Do not backup and close autor	matically in 2 sec		



#### Windows Shutdown

The following example shows when the user performs Windows shutdown with the Reminder setting turned on.

1. Turn on the Reminder setting, then click the [Save] button.



2. Perform Windows shutdown.

Shut Dow	n Windows	
	What do you want the computer to do?	
	Shut down	
	Closes all open programs, shuts down Windows, and then turns off your computer.	
	OK Cancel <u>H</u> elp	

3. A dialog box will prompt the user to back up all the backup sets with enabled 'Reminder' setting.

0			
0 B247PRO			×
Do you want to backup the foll	owing BackupSet(s)?	Yes	
Daily Backup Sample Backup Set		No	
Locking workstation			
Shutdown Computer	C Restart Comput	er	
Do not backup and close autor	atically in 3 sec		



Below is the list of example scenarios with complex settings:

## Scenario 1 (Windows Log Off + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows logoff with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

O B247PRO	×	[Yes] – If Yes is selected, then
Do you want to backup the following BackupSet(s)?	Yes	the Windows will be locked, and the displayed backup sets will
Daily Backup Sample Backup Set	No	start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will log off automatically even if Windows is still on lock.
Locking workstation     Shutdown Computer     C Restart Computer     Do not backup and close automatically in 3 sec	ter	<b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will proceed to log off.

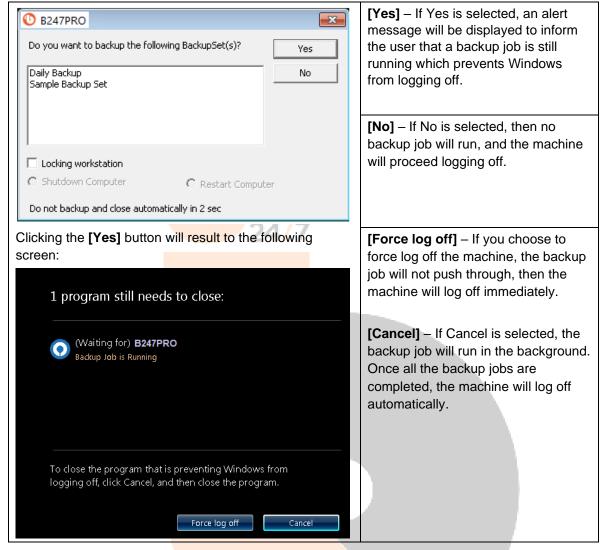
NOTE

The machine will log off after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.



## Scenario 2 (Windows Log Off + Unselected Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows logoff with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.





## Scenario 3 (Windows Restart + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

Image: B247PRO         Do you want to backup the following BackupSet(s)?         Daily Backup         Sample Backup Set	Yes No	<b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, then the Windows will be locked, and the displayed backup sets will start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will restart automatically even if the Windows is still on lock.
<ul> <li>Locking workstation</li> <li>Shutdown Computer</li> <li>Restart Computer</li> <li>Do not backup and close automatically in 2 sec</li> </ul>	ter	<b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will restart immediately.

#### NOTE

- 1. You can select the 'Shutdown Computer' from the options in the dialog box, but the machine will still follow the action that you perform from the Windows, which is 'restart'. The machine will reboot once all the backup jobs are completed.
- 2. The machine will restart after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.



## Scenario 4 (Windows Restart + Unselected Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows restart with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.

Image: Sample Backup Set       Image: Sample Backup Set         Image: Sample Backup Set       Image: Sample Backup Set	<b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, an alert message will be displayed to inform the user that a backup job is still running which prevents Windows from restarting.
Locking workstation     Shutdown Computer     Restart Computer	<b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will restart immediately.
Do not backup and close automatically in 1 sec Clicking the <b>[Yes]</b> button will result to the following screen: 1 program still needs to close:	[Force restart] – If you choose to force restart the machine, the backup job will not push through, then the machine will restart immediately.
(Waiting for) <b>B247PRO</b> Backup Job is Running	[Cancel] – If Cancel is selected, the backup job will run in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will restart automatically.
To close the program that is preventing Windows from logging off, click Cancel, and then close the program. Force log off Cancel	



## Scenario 5 (Windows Shutdown + Enabled Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows shutdown with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation enabled.

O B247PRO	×	<b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, then the Windows will be locked, and
Do you want to backup the following BackupSet(s)? Daily Backup Sample Backup Set	Yes No	the displayed backup sets will start backing up in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will shut down automatically even
Locking workstation		if the Windows is still on lock. <b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will shut down
Shutdown Computer     C Restart Comput     Do not backup and close automatically in 3 sec	ter	immediately.

#### NOTE

- 1. You can select the 'Restart Computer' from the options in the dialog box, but the machine will still follow the action that you perform from the Windows, which is 'shutdown'. The machine will shut down once all the backup jobs are completed.
- 2. The machine will shut down after four (4) seconds if no action is selected.



## Scenario 6 (Windows Shutdown + Unselected Locking Workstation)

The following scenario shows when the user performs Windows shut down with the Reminder setting turned on, and Locking Workstation unselected.

Image: State Stat	<b>[Yes]</b> – If Yes is selected, an alert message will be displayed to inform the user that a backup job is still running which prevents Windows from shutting down.
<ul> <li>Locking workstation</li> <li>Shutdown Computer</li> <li>C Restart Computer</li> <li>Do not backup and close automatically in 2 sec</li> </ul>	<b>[No]</b> – If No is selected, then no backup job will run, and the machine will shut down immediately.
Clicking the <b>[Yes]</b> button will result to the following screen: 1 program still needs to close:	[Force shut down] – If you choose to force shutdown the machine, the backup job will not push through, then the machine will shut down immediately.
(Waiting for) <b>B247PRO</b> Backup Job is Running To close the program that is preventing Windows from	<b>[Cancel]</b> – If Cancel is selected, the backup job will run in the background. Once all the backup jobs are completed, the machine will shut down automatically.
logging off, click Cancel, and then close the program. Force log off Cancel	



# Appendix E: Create Free Trial Account in Advanced Client (B247PRO)

Users can create a free trial account when they login to Advanced Client (B247PRO) for the first time. Please ensure that the following requirements are met before creating your trial account:

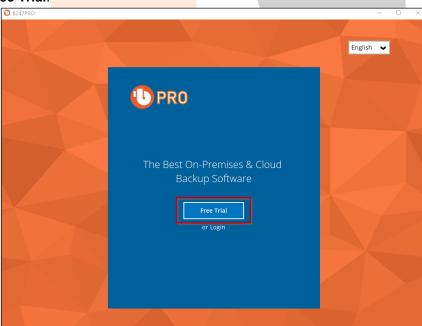
 A valid email address which will be used for receiving notices. A welcome message will also be sent upon creation of the account which specifies the User Setting and Quota set for backup in B247CBS.

While here are the limitations of a trial account:

- The Free Trial registration option will only be displayed once the user login for the first time. If you cannot create a free trial account kindly contact Backup247 Technical Support Team.
- Only alphanumeric characters and selected special characters, A to Z, 0 to 9, @, and \_, are allowed to be used for the Login name. While there may be some limitations on password complexity and age which is determined by the backup service provider. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for further details.
- The add-on modules available and quota size are determined by the backup service provider.
- The trial account period is determined by Backup247 Technical Support Team. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for details.

**NOTE** The Free Trial registration option may not be available. This depends on the settings preconfigured by us. Please contact Backup247 Technical Support Team for more information.

Follow the steps below to create a Free Trial backup account in Advanced Client (B247PRO).



1. Click on Free Trial.



2. Enter the Login name that you want. Also provide your email address and password. Confirm your password and click **OK** to create your trial account.

🕑 B247PRO		- 🗆 X
X		English 🖌
	U PRO	125.7
	Register Trial User Login name	
	Email	
	Password Confirm password	
	*All fields are required	
	ок	

 Download Google Authenticator on your mobile phone and scan QR code presented by the installer. Alternatively, you may choose to skip device pairing, however it's not recommended.

🕚 B247PRO	—	$\times$
scan the same QR code to complete the Google Authenticator	elow Mobile App from App Store. Once installed the Mobile App, launch it and	
	Show Secret Key         Enter one-time passcode generated from authenticator app         Display name:       (00:00:17)	
Skip Device Pairing		

4. Enter once-time passcode generated from authenticator app.



0 B247PRO			-	- 🗆 X
🕛 PRO	Trial Version		trial_user 🞴 English 🖌	0
Ba	ickup	Backup Sets	Report	
Re	Pstore	Settings	Utilities	
	Don't k	now how to	o use?	

5. Once the trial account is created, this screen will be displayed.

6. If the user has input their email at **Step 3**, they will periodically receive an email notification(s) about the changes to their trial account such as backup report(s), or when the expiration date of their trial period is approaching in less than 10 days.

istrator for fi	\$	•
istrator for fi		
istrator for fi		
	urther action.	-

Below is an example of the trial expiration email.



## Appendix F: How to Manage Network Drives which are not set in Windows

Users have several options in managing network drives that are not set up on Windows, which are the following:

- Select All selects all the files and folders in the network drive.
- Select Only will only deselect the network drive but the file selection will remain the same.
- Deselect All deselects all the files and folders in the network drive.
- Edit Credential allows changing the credentials of the network drive even after it has been set upon creation of the backup set.
- Delete deletes the network drive.

For instructions on how to use the different functions, see instructions below:

#### Select All

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click I would like to choose the files to backup.

b1	Backup Source Select the files and folders that you want to backup
General	Desktop
Source	□ My Documents □ ★ Favorites
Backup Schedule Continuous Backup	Outlook
Destination Show advanced settings	Filter Apply filters to the backup source off I would like to choose the files to backup
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help



2. Right-click on the network drive and Select All.

Folders		Name	Size	Date modified
🗐 📲 This PC	🗆 퉬 1583976	891245		
🖶 🗌 📥 Local Disk (C:)	🗆 퉬 settings			^
표 🗌 🚑 CD Drive (D:)	🗌 📄 ACB_Us	erGuideforWindows_versi	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🕸 🗣 Network	🗌 📄 CBS_ver	sion7_UserGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🗈 📄 Libraries		eBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🖶 🖂 🔂 \\125.5.184.23\Shar	Select All	JdFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🗄 🗹 🏗 \\125.5.184.78\samp		dFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	Select Only	dFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	Deselect All	/I_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	Edit Credential	ageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	Delete	ageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
		ageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗌 💽 AlertMe	ssageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗌 💽 AlertMe	ssageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗆 📄 BackupS		15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	🗆 🖹 BackupS	et 2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Show files		ltems per p	age 50	✔ Page 1/1 ✔
		items per p		

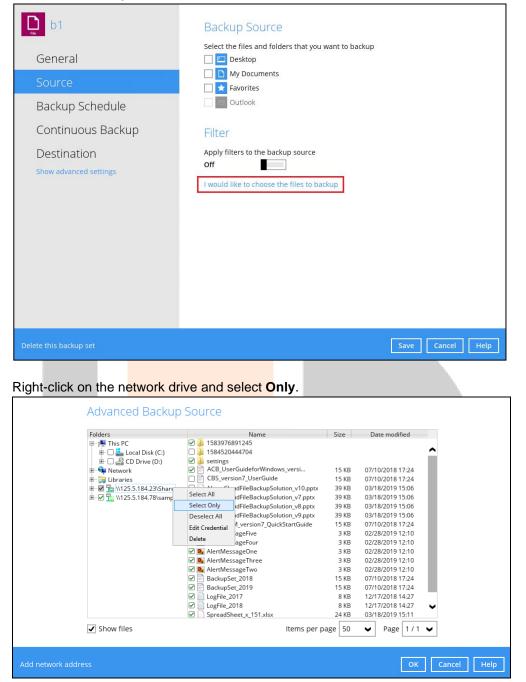
3. All the files and folders in the network drive will now be selected.

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
🗐 📲 This PC	I583976891245		
🕮 🗌 🃥 Local Disk (C:)	🗹 퉬 settings		^
🖮 🗌 🏭 CD Drive (D:)	🗹 📄 ACB_UserGuideforWindows_versi	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🖶 👽 Network	CBS_version7_UserGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🖶 🚞 Libraries	CloudFileBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🗄 🗹 🟪 \\125.5.184.23\Share	CloudFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🗄 🖓 📆 \\125.5.184.78\sample	CloudFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	CloudFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	🗹 📄 ·OBM_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	🗹 🃭 AlertMessageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	AlertMessageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	✓ NertMessageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 🃭 AlertMessageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 📭 AlertMessageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 📄 BackupSet_2018	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24 🔍
	RackupSet 2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Show files	Items per	r page 50	✓ Page 1/1 ✓



## **Select Only**

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click **I would like to choose** the files to backup.



2.



3. The network drive will now be deselected but there will be no change in the file selection.

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
📮 📲 This PC	🗹 퉬 1583976891245		
🕸 🗔 🏪 Local Disk (C:)	🗹 퉬 settings		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
🗄 🗌 🚑 CD Drive (D:)	🗹 📄 ACB_UserGuideforWindows_versi	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🖻 📬 Network	🗹 📄 CBS_version7_UserGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🖻 🥽 Libraries	CloudFileBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🖻 🗹 🟪 \\125.5.184.23\Share	CloudFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🖻 🗹 🕂 \\125.5.184.78\sample	CloudFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	CloudFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	🗹 📄 OBM_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	🗹 🃭 AlertMessageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 💽 AlertMessageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 💽 AlertMessageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 🃭 AlertMessageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 騷 AlertMessageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 📄 BackupSet_2018	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	🔽 🖹 BackupSet 2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Show files	Items per	page 50	✔ Page 1/1 ✔

## **Deselect All**

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click I would like to choose the files to backup.

b1	Backup Source
General Source Backup Schedule	Select the files and folders that you want to backup          Desktop         My Documents         Favorites         Outlook
Continuous Backup Destination Show advanced settings	Filter Apply filters to the backup source off I would like to choose the files to backup
Delete this backup set	Save Cancel Help



2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Deselect All**.

Folders		Name	Size	Date modified
🗐 📲 This PC	🗹 🍌 1583976	5891245		
🐵 🗔 🏪 Local Disk (C:)	🗹 鷆 settings			
🗄 🗌 🚑 CD Drive (D:)	🗹 📄 ACB_Us	erGuideforWindows_versi	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🗉 👊 Network			15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🗈 ᇘ Libraries		eBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🖻 🗹 🚡 \\125.5.184.23\Shar		udFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🖻 🗹 🏗 \\125.5.184.78\samp	Select All	dFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	Select Only	dFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	Deselect All	/_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	Edit Credential	ageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
		ageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	Delete	ageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 🃭 AlertMe	ssageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 🃭 AlertMe	ssageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗹 📄 BackupS		15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	Rackup	Set 2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Show files		ltems per p	age 50	✔ Page 1 / 1
Show mes		items per p	age _ 50	• 108c 171

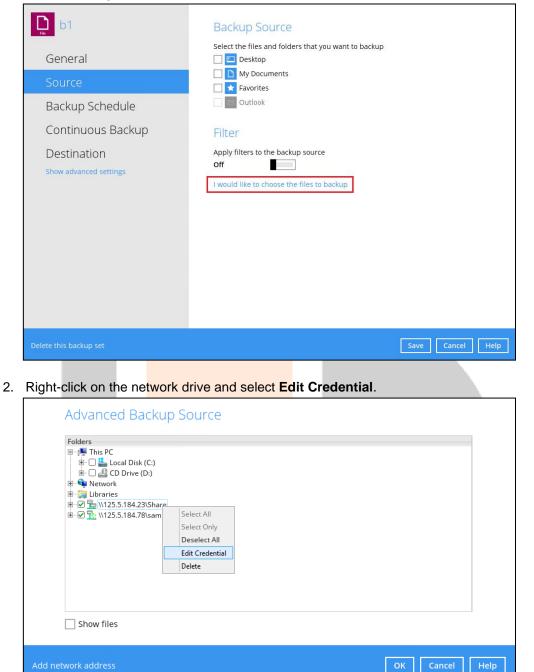
3. All the files and folders in the network drive will now be deselected.

Folders	Name	Size	Date modified
🖶 📲 This PC	🗆 퉬 1583976891245		
🐵 🗌 🏪 Local Disk (C:)	🗆 퉬 settings		·
🖭 🗌 🔐 CD Drive (D:)	ACB_UserGuideforWindows_versi	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🕸 🗣 Network	CBS_version7_UserGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
🖲 Libraries	CloudFileBackupSolution_v10.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🗉 🗆 🟪 \\125.5.184.23\Share	CloudFileBackupSolution_v7.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
🗄 🖓 🔂 \\125.5.184.78\sample	CloudFileBackupSolution_v8.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	CloudFileBackupSolution_v9.pptx	39 KB	03/18/2019 15:06
	OBM_version7_QuickStartGuide	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	AlertMessageFive	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	AlertMessageFour	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	AlertMessageOne	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	AlertMessageThree	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	AlertMessageTwo	3 KB	02/28/2019 12:10
	🗆 📄 BackupSet_2018	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
	BackupSet 2019	15 KB	07/10/2018 17:24
✓ Show files	Items per	r page 50	✔ Page 1/1 ✔



## **Edit Credential**

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click I would like to choose the files to backup.





3. The Network Address window will appear, update the Username and/or Password. Click **OK** once done.

Network Addres	SS		
Input the details of netw	ork address, and click [OK]	to proceed.	
Network address (e.g. \\	ervername.doamin\path)		
\\125.5.184.23\Share			
This share requires a	ccess credentials		
User name (e.g. domain)	username)		
Administrator			
Password			
•••••			
			OK Cancel

## Delete

1. Go to Backup Sets, select the backup set. Select Source and click I would like to choose the files to backup.

b1	Backup Source
General Source	Select the files and folders that you want to backup          Desktop         My Documents         Favorites
Backup Schedule Continuous Backup	Outlook
Destination Show advanced settings	Filter Apply filters to the backup source off Would like to choose the files to backup

Save Cancel Help



2. Right-click on the network drive and select **Delete**.

Advanced Backup Folders This PC Coal Disk (C:) Coal Disk (			
Add network address		OK Cancel	Help

The network drive will now be deleted.

Folders         Image: The PC         Imag	
Show files	
dd network address	OK Cancel Help